

A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

LEONARD A. MAGNUS

PG  
2111  
M19  
1917

CORNELL  
UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY



Gift of the  
CHARLES M. TAYLOR ESTATE



Cornell University  
Library

The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.

<http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924026616395>



Cornell University Library  
PG 2111.M19 1917

Concise grammar of the Russian language.



3 1924 026 616 395

oim

A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE



A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

BY

LEONARD A. MAGNUS, LL.B.

*Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"  
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.*

---

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.

NEW YORK  
E. P. DUTTON & CO.

1917 •

**M**

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
BUEE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

49079B



## PREFACE.

THE Russian language is becoming daily of increasing importance, both commercially and literarily. It is used over nearly one-seventh of the world, from Petrograd to Vladivostók and in the other Slav States. The literature, popular and cultivated, technical and scientific, published in Russia, must claim the attention of students to the same degree, as German has done in the past.

The greatest puzzle in Russian is the accentuation, which governs the pronunciation and inflection, and seems utterly arbitrary. To a large extent it can be scientifically and simply explained, and to this feature the author has devoted especial care.

The difficulties of the language cannot be denied; but they have been accentuated by two accidents: first, that all grammars were constructed on a plan merely imitative of Latin; secondly, that they mostly came from Germany, and were framed in accordance with the requirements of the German mind.

It is with the ambition of writing a book on Russian grammar that shall translate Russian into English idiom, and shall proceed on lines more consonant with the genius of Slav speech, that this book has been attempted.

The author wishes to express his obligations to many friends, English and Russian, who have rendered him invaluable assistance, and, in particular, to Mr. Mark Sieff and Mr. J. H. G. Grattan; and to acknowledge his indebtedness to Berneker's Russian studies, and the essays of Professor Boyer (of the Sorbonne).

This grammar, whilst aiming at being practical, is based on historical and philological methods. Explanatory notes on apparent irregularities are added in smaller type, the principal rules being made prominent by italics or otherwise. This grammar should be used in conjunction with one of the progressive readers now being published in England.

L. A. M.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	v
Introduction . . . . .	xix
Alphabet . . . . .	xxi
Russian Script and Italic . . . . .	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting . . . . .	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters . . . . .	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels . . . . .	2
(2) а and я . . . . .	2
(3) э, е and ѣ . . . . .	3
(4) ѡ, Ѣ, і, ѵ . . . . .	3
(5) о and ё . . . . .	4
(6) у and ю . . . . .	5
(7) ѣ and ѥ . . . . .	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced . . . . .	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants . . . . .	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary . . . . .	8
(1) The Labials п, б, м, в, ф, θ . . . . .	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н . . . . .	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х . . . . .	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Consonants с, з, ш, ж, щ, ц, ч . . . . .	11
(5) The Liquids л and р . . . . .	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final . . . . .	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian . . . . .	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs . . . . .	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ё . . . . .	16

## ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. The Parts of Speech . . . . .	19
-------------------------------------	----

## THE NOUN.

§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders . . . . .	20
§ 12. The Declensions . . . . .	21

	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases . . . . .	22
§ 14. The Numbers . . . . .	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns . . . . .	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Mascu- lines . . . . .	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters . . . . .	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in а and я . . . . .	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in и and мя—Mascu- lines of the Third Declension— <i>путь</i> . . . . .	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension . . . . .	30
§ 21. Neuters in <i>мя</i> of the Third Declension . . . . .	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension—	
(1) <i>мать, дочь</i> . . . . .	32
(2) <i>дѣтя</i> . . . . .	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns . . . . .	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive and locative singular in “ <i>у</i> ” The “ <i>и</i> ” declension . . . . .	34
(2) Plurals in <i>-ья</i> . . . . .	35
(3) Plurals in <i>-я</i> . . . . .	36
(4) Genitive plural in <i>-ъ</i> . . . . .	37
(5) Nominative singular in <i>-иць</i> . . . . .	38
(6) Irregular formations . . . . .	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in <i>-ъ</i> and <i>-ей</i> . . . . .	41
(2) Neuters in <i>-ие</i> and feminines in <i>-ия</i> . . . . .	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension —nouns in <i>-ище, -ко</i> and others . . . . .	43
(4) Plurals in <i>-ья</i> . . . . .	43
(5) Irregular forms—	
(а) Obsolete, <i>нѣбо, чѹдо, -ята</i> . . . . .	44
(β) Duals , . . . .	45

	PAGE
§ 27. Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	45
§ 28. Remarks on the Second Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей . . . . .	46
(2) Contraction of -юю, -ею to -оѣ, -ей . . . . .	47
(3) Masculine nouns in second declension . . . . .	47
(4) Nouns in -ия . . . . .	47
§ 29. Accentuation of Second Declension . . . . .	47
§ 30. Remarks on the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 31. Accentuation of the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 32. The "Euphonic" Vowels о, е and ё—	
I. Extrusion of ъ and њ when unaccented . . . . .	50
II. Insertion of о and е for euphony . . . . .	52
III. What heavy final consonants are allowed . . . . .	54
IV. Remarks on the third declension . . . . .	55

#### THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. Preliminary Observations—	
(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective . . . . .	55
(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives . . . . .	56
(3) No distinction of gender in the plural . . . . .	56
(4) The predicative adjective . . . . .	56
(5) The determinative and simple adjective . . . . .	56
(6) The accentuation of the adjective . . . . .	58
(7) No third declension adjectives . . . . .	58
(8) The unnecessary grammarians' spellings in the determinatives . . . . .	58
(9) The substantival use of adjectives . . . . .	58
§ 34. Formation of Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
(1) Examples of simple adjectives . . . . .	58
(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples . . . . .	59
(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives . . . . .	61

§ 35.	The Determinative Adjectives—	
	(1) The scheme and formation . . . . .	62
	(2) Examples . . . . .	64
§ 36.	The Formation of the Predicatives—	
	(1) Where no corresponding predicative exists . . . . .	68
	(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists . . . . .	68
	(3) Possessives . . . . .	68
	(4) Instances of accentuation of predica- tives . . . . .	68
§ 37.	The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
	(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed . . . . .	70
	(2) The superlative . . . . .	70
	(3) Substitutes for the superlative . . . . .	71
§ 38.	The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
	I. Use of the uninflected form . . . . .	72
	II. The four simple inflected superlatives . . . . .	73
	III. Adjectives with no determinative com- parative . . . . .	73
	IV. Use of prefix <i>по</i> with indeclinable comparative . . . . .	73
	V. Translation of “than” . . . . .	74
§ 39.	The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
	I. The regular form <i>-ѣе, -ѣѣшій</i> , and accentuation . . . . .	74
	II. The shorter form <i>-ѣе, -ѣшіі</i> . . . . .	74
	III. Comparison with words from different roots . . . . .	77

## THE PRONOUN.

§ 40	(1) Preliminary observations . . . . .	77
	(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs . . . . .	78-9

	PAGE
§ 41. Examples of the Pronouns—	
I. The interrogative pronouns . . . .	80
Remarks on кой, чей, который, сколько	81
II. The relatives кто, который . . . .	81
III. The demonstratives тотъ, э́тотъ, о́ный, сей; remarks on the use of them . . . .	82
IV. The universals ка́ждый, весь, вся́кий . . . .	83
V. The personal pronouns and possessives	84
(1) Use of сво́й and себ́я, ся . . . .	85
(2) Use of е́го, etc., with prepositions . . . . .	85
(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in -о́й	86
(4) When personal pronouns are used . . . . .	86
VI. The indefinite pronouns . . . . .	86
VII. The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian . . . . .	87
VIII. The pronouns of identity, and самъ and са́мый . . . . .	87
IX. The pronouns of difference, друго́й, ино́й, прѳ́чие . . . . .	88

#### THE VERB.

§ 42. (1) Table of Russian Verbs . . . . .	89
(2) Preliminary observations—	
(i) The parts of the Russian verb . . . . .	90
(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects . . . . .	91
(iii) How the parts are formed . . . . .	92
(iv) Verbs original and derivative . . . . .	92
§ 43. The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic . . . . .	93
§ 44. The forms derived from the Infinitive . . . . .	94
§ 45. The formations from the 1st person sing. Present . . . . .	96
§ 46. The laws of the accentuation of the verbs . . . . .	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of желать and вѣрять . . . . .	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules . . . . .	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms—	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чь . . . . .	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть . . . . .	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -ереть, -елеть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть . . . . .	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть . . . . .	105
пдти́, честь, състь . . . . .	106
Accentuation of past tense . . . . .	107
VI. Roots in в, жить, плыть, слыть . . . . .	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal а in infinitive . . . . .	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in-нуть. Preliminary.	
I. "Instantaneous" verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	109
II. "Inchoative" verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	110
III. Examples of conjugation . . . . .	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary . . . . .	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть . . . . .	112
(2) Vocalic roots ( $\alpha$ ) in "а" знать, снать . . . . .	113
( $\beta$ ) Roots in н, бить, etc., past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
( $\gamma$ ) Roots in у, дуть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
( $\delta$ ) Roots in ѣ, смѣть . . . . .	113
( $\epsilon$ ) Verbs in ыть <i>and</i> пѣть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -ять, and accentuation . . . . .	115
слать, стлать, дыхать, etc. . . . .	116

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -ать, -ять . . . . .	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣть . . . . .	116
Accentuation of them . . . . .	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -овать, and accentua- tion. Derivatives in -провать, and accentuation . . . . .	117
II. Original verbs in -овать, -евать . . . . .	118
(4) Iteratives in -ать, -ять . . . . .	119
(5) Iteratives in -ывать, -пвать . . . . .	119
давать, -ставать, знавать . . . . .	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary—	
Infin. in -ѣть, -ить . . . . .	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -ать, -ять, гнать, стоять, спать . . . . .	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation . . . . .	122
Past tense in -ѣлъ . . . . .	123
хотѣть, бѣжать . . . . .	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить . . . . .	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs. Accentuation and origins . . . . .	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. ревьѣть, хотѣть, -дѣть, стать, посѣтитъ, обратитъ, -шибитъ . . . . .	126
II. Using different roots. идти, быть (and its compounds), ѣхать . . . . .	127
III. Obsolete forms. здать, verbs in “м,” вѣмь, есмь, ѣсть, дать . . . . .	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary . . . . .	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Itera- tive — Instantaneous — Causative — In- ceptive . . . . .	131
Verbs having no perfective . . . . .	132



## § 59. The Formation of the Aspects—

PAGE

I. (1) From original verbs . . . . .	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally perfective . . . . .	133
Iteratives in -áть, -вáть . . . . .	134
When compounded . . . . .	134
-честь and -чита́ть . . . . .	135
(2) Second conjugation in -ну́ть . . . . .	135
The “instantaneous” aspect . . . . .	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions to form perfective . . . . .	135
Iteratives in -ыва́ть -а́ть . . . . .	136
двѣ́гать, двѣга́ть, etc. . . . .	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs in -и́ть, -ѣ́ть. Imperfective in -я́ть. Abstract forms in -а́ть, -я́ть, -и́ть. . . . .	137
When compounded, abstract is imperfective . . . . .	138
Iterative forms in -а́ть, -я́ть . . . . .	139
Iteratives in -ива́ть, -ыва́ть . . . . .	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative verbs . . . . .	140
With prepositions . . . . .	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root. Perfective and imperfective, concrete and abstract . . . . .	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -и́ть, -я́ть, -а́ть, -ну́ть, -ыва́ть . . . . .	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -и́ть and -ѣ́ть	145
VI. По and за as forming depreciatory, or diminutive, and inceptive aspects . . . . .	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—дру́г дру́га . . . . .	147

THE NUMERALS.		PAGE
§ 61.	Preliminary . . . . .	149
§ 62.	I. The numerals 1-10 . . . . .	150
	Declension of <i>о́ба</i> . . . . .	152
	II. The numerals 11-90 . . . . .	152
	III. The numerals 100-1,000,000.— <i>сто</i>	153-4
	The compound numerals.— <i>ты́сяча</i>	154-5
	IV. Notes—	
	(1) Frequency . . . . .	155
	(2) Distributives . . . . .	155
	(3) Nought . . . . .	155
	(4) Noun governed by last numeral . . . . .	155
	(5) Decimals . . . . .	156
	(6) Compound ordinals and examples . . . . .	156
	(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>дво́и</i> , etc. . . . .	157
	(8) Fractions— <i>полови́на</i> , <i>полтора́</i> ; <i>пол-</i> <i>compounds</i> . . . . .	158
	(9) Dates— <i>го́дь</i> and <i>ле́то</i> . . . . .	160
§ 63.	THE ADVERBS . . . . .	160
§ 64.	THE PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	161
§ 65.	THE CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	161
§ 66.	THE INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	161

## SYNTAX.

§ 67.	Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective . . . . .	162
§ 68.	The Article . . . . .	163
§ 69.	The Cases—	
	I. Nominative . . . . .	163
	II. Vocative . . . . .	164
	III. Accusative as object . . . . .	164
	Special uses: duration . . . . .	165

	PAGE
IV. Genitive . . . . .	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive . . . . .	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences. . . . .	171
(iv) Replaced by dative . . . . .	171
(v) After comparatives . . . . .	172
(vi) Objective case . . . . .	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates . . . . .	173
(ix) Partitive sense . . . . .	173
(x) Descriptive . . . . .	173
V. The Dative . . . . .	174
VI. Instrumental . . . . .	175
(1) Agent . . . . .	175
(2) Means . . . . .	175
(3) Predicative . . . . .	176
(4) Manner . . . . .	176
(5) Measurement . . . . .	176
(6) Words of quality . . . . .	177
(7) Time . . . . .	177
(8) After certain verbs . . . . .	177
VII. The Locative. . . . .	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles . . . . .	178–9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive . . . . .	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative . . . . .	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and между . . . . .	188
§ 75. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 76. The Prepositions подъ, предъ and за . . . . .	189
§ 77. The Prepositions въ, о and на . . . . .	193
§ 78. The Prepositions по and съ. . . . .	198
§ 79. The Verbal Prefixes воз, вы, пере, пре, разъ	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

	PAGE
§ 81. The Numerals—	
I. The date, days, months, etc. . . . .	206
II. Age . . . . .	208
III. Adjectives compounded with numerals . . . . .	209
IV. The time of day . . . . .	209
V. Fractions . . . . .	210
VI. Russian money . . . . .	212
VII. Frequencies . . . . .	212
VIII. One cardinal now obsolete . . . . .	213
IX. Cards . . . . .	213
§ 82. The Pronouns—	
I. Interrogative . . . . .	214
II. Relative . . . . .	214
III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of НИ . . . . .	215
IV. The reciprocal pronouns . . . . .	216
V. The negative pronouns . . . . .	217
§ 83. The Russian Appellatives—	
I. In conversation — ВЫ, ТЫ, БАРИНЪ, patronymics. . . . .	218
II. Between masters and servants . . . . .	220
III. Addressing meetings . . . . .	221
IV. Titles . . . . .	221
V. Addressing letters . . . . .	223
§ 84. Interrogative sentences — ЛИ, РАЗВѢ . . . . .	225
§ 85. Negative sentences . . . . .	225
§ 86. The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula” . . . . .	228
§ 87. The Verb “to have” . . . . .	230
§ 88. Special use of Infinitive . . . . .	231
§ 89. The Gerundives and Participles—	
I. The gerundives . . . . .	232
II. The participles — past and present. -МЫЙ = -ble. . . . .	232
§ 90. Subordinate Clauses—	
I. Temporal . . . . .	234
II. Causal . . . . .	235
III. Conditional . . . . .	235
IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect . . . . .	237
V. Reported Speech . . . . .	233

	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms . . . . .	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses—	
пошелъ . . . . .	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects . . . . .	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries . . . . .	247
давнѣ, буду, стану, будто . . . . .	247
только что, бывало . . . . .	248
было, the future perfect . . . . .	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction—	
I. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	249
II. Translation of “one” (says) . . . . .	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs . . . . .	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle”	
Voice . . . . .	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships . . . . .	253
Table of Kinsbip . . . . .	258
Table of Affinity . . . . .	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation . . . . .	260
§ 98. The Nouns—	
I. Foreign terminations in common use	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes . . . . .	261
III. Patronymics . . . . .	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine	262
V. Abstract nouns . . . . .	262
VI. Verbal nouns . . . . .	263
VII. The agent or implement . . . . .	264
VIII. Diminutives—	
(1) Masculines of first declension	265
(2) Neuters of first declension . . . . .	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of	
second declension . . . . .	266
IX. Augmentatives . . . . .	267
X. Miscellaneous . . . . .	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes . . . . .	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations . . . . .	270

## APPENDIX.

	PAGE
I. Verbs of asking, etc., with genitive; просить, хотѣть, ждать, etc. . . . .	271
II. How to translate "to-morrow morning," etc. . . . .	272
III. Some indeclinable participles as prepositions . . . . .	272
IV. (1) The root СТА ( $\alpha$ ) -ставать, стать . . . . .	272
( $\beta$ ) -ста́нвать, сто́ять . . . . .	273
( $\gamma$ ) -сто́пть . . . . .	273
( $\delta$ ) -ста́вливать, ста́внть . . . . .	273
( $\epsilon$ ) -станáвливать, станóвнть . . . . .	274
(2) The root ЛЕГ ( $\alpha$ ) -легать, лечь . . . . .	274
( $\beta$ ) -лежáть . . . . .	274
( $\gamma$ ) -лагáть, -ложнть . . . . .	274
(3) The root СЕД ( $\alpha$ ) сѣсть . . . . .	275
( $\beta$ ) сн́дѣть . . . . .	275
( $\gamma$ ) саднть, -сажáть . . . . .	275
V. The forms of идти, ѣсть, ѣхать distinguished . . . . .	275
VI. The aspects in the sentence-period: увидáть, уви́дѣть, видáть . . . . .	276
VII. The order of words in Russian . . . . .	276
VIII. How to form the passive in Russian . . . . .	277
IX. How to translate "must"; the meanings of долгъ, дол́женъ, etc. . . . .	278
X. The distinctions in meaning of съ, отъ, and изъ, and the temporal prepositions . . . . .	279
XI. Some verbs meaning "to burn," "shine," etc. . . . .	280
XII. A special idiomatic use of the infinitive in emphasis . . . . .	280
XIII. The Russian for "yes" . . . . .	281
XIV. Verbs meaning "to sleep" and "dream" . . . . .	281
XV. Words connoting "cost," "expense," etc. . . . .	281
XVI. The accentuation of the Russian noun . . . . .	282
(i) Original forms . . . . .	282
(ii) Terminations with fixed accentuation . . . . .	284
(iii) Derivative nouns . . . . .	284
XVII. The accentuation of the Russian verb . . . . .	284
(1) The undeclined part. accented on the stem . . . . .	284
(2) The past part. passive accented on the stem . . . . .	285
(3) The accent shifting in the verbal noun. . . . .	285
(4) Polysyllables with shifting accents . . . . .	285

## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the Principality of Moscow and the Republic of Nówgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vílna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Serbian and Bulgarian, Slovenian, Slovaque, Croatian,

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;

but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. *ǎ, ę, ě, ě, ž, ž, ř, é*, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

---

*In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakspeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German: i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule; except where specially stated otherwise.*

The following symbols are also used (as in other Slavonic languages):—

č = ch (church)	š = sh (she)
ě = ě	o = a (villa)
ł = лб	šč = ш (freshcheese)
ń = нб	ž = s (leisure)

[v. pp. 2-15.]



## THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, а, е, и, ъ, о, у, ы, ё, э, ю, я; twenty-one consonants, б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ; one semi-vowel, ѱ (i *krátkoyi*); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, т, ь—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord. А а	Caps. Ord. А а	а (as in <i>ah</i> )	а ( <i>father</i> )	а
Б б	В в	be (like English <i>bay</i> )	б	б
В в	В в	ve (as in Eng. <i>vale</i> )	в	в
Г г	Г г	ge (like English <i>gay</i> )	г*	г
Д д	Д д	de (like English <i>day</i> )	д	д
Е е	Е е	ye (like English <i>yea</i> )	е	е or ye
Ж ж	Ж ж	zhe (like French <i>gear</i> )	{ ž (like s in } { <i>leisure</i> ) }	ž
З з	З з	ze (like English <i>zay</i> )	з	z
И и	И и	i (like English 'e)	{ i (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	i
Й й	Й й	и краткое (i <i>krátkoyi</i> )	{ y (as in } { <i>yet</i> ) }	y
І і	І і	и съ точкой (i <i>stóckoy</i> )	{ i (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	i
К к	К к	ka (like English <i>kah</i> )	к	к
Л л	Л л	ell	л	л

\* Always "hard" as in Give, Got,

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Trans- literation.
Caps. Ord. М м	Caps. Ord. <i>M m</i>	em	m	m
Н н	<i>H h</i>	en	n	n
О о	<i>O o</i>	o (as in <i>stock</i> )	o	o
П п	<i>P p</i>	pe (as in <i>pay</i> )	p	p
Р р	<i>P p</i>	err (as in Scotch <i>air</i> )	r	r
С с	<i>C c</i>	ess	s	s
Т т	<i>T t</i>	te (as in <i>tay</i> )	t	t
У у	<i>Y y</i>	u (as in <i>rule</i> )	u	u
Ф ф	<i>F f</i>	eff	f	f
Х х	<i>X x</i>	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> or German <i>ch</i>	kh
Ц ц	<i>C c</i>	tse (as in <i>tsay</i> )	ts	ts
Ч ч	<i>Ch ch</i>	če (as in <i>chaste</i> )	English <i>ch</i>	č
Ш ш	<i>Sh sh</i>	ša (as in <i>shah</i> )	English <i>sh</i>	š
Щ щ	<i>Shch shch</i>	šča	{šč rapidly} {combined*}	šč
Ъ ъ	<i>B b</i>	yerr (ерь)	mute	—
Ы ы	<i>Y y</i>	yerý (еры́)	{y like i in} { <i>swim</i> }	y
Ь ь	<i>B b</i>	yerĩ (ерь)	mute	—
Ѣ ѣ	<i>E e</i>	yatĩ (ять)	{like } {Russian e}	ě
Э э	<i>E e</i>	e (like English <i>ě</i> )	{like <i>ě</i> in} { <i>ell</i> }	e
Ю ю	<i>Y y</i>	yu (like English <i>yu</i> )	yu	yu
Я я	<i>Y y</i>	ya (like English <i>yah!</i> )	ya	ya
Ѧ ѧ	<i>Th th</i>	fitá	f	
Ѩ ѩ	<i>V v</i>	ízitsa	like n	

\* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

## RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

Cursive.	Italic.	Cursive.	Italic.
А а	А а	С с	С с
Б б	Б б	Т т	Т т
В в	В в	У у	У у
Г г	Г г	Ф ф	Ф ф
Д д	Д д	Х х	Х х
Е е	Е е	Ц ц	Ц ц
Ж ж	Ж ж	Ч ч	Ч ч
З з	З з	Ш ш	Ш ш
И и	И и	Щ щ	Щ щ
Й й	Й й	Ъ ъ	Ъ ъ
І і	І і	Ы ы	Ы ы
К к	К к	Ь ь	Ь ь
Л л	Л л	Ѧ Ѧ	Ѧ Ѧ
М м	М м	Э э	Э э
Н н	Н н	Ю ю	Ю ю
О о	О о	Я я	Я я
П п	П п	Ѳ Ѳ	Ѳ Ѳ
Р р	Р р	Ѵ Ѵ	Ѵ Ѵ

## SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
 Тяньнется-ль въ сердце грусть  
 Одну молитву чудную  
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодатная  
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
 И дышетъ непонятная  
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
 Сомненье далеко  
 И вьрится и плачется  
 И такъ легко, легко

## ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
 Тяньнется-ль въ сердце грусть  
 Одну молитву чудную  
 Твержу я наизусть  
 Есть сила благодатная  
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
 И дышетъ непонятная  
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
 Сомненье далеко  
 И вьрится и плачется  
 И такъ легко, легко. (Термоитовъ.)

# RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

## THE ALPHABET.

PARTICULAR attention is drawn to *б, г, д, и, ж, н, з, с, м, у*; letters which often occasion the learner difficulty. To distinguish *м* and *и* in loose writing, a line is often used above and below, e.g. *̄м, ̄и*.

Remember in all transliterations *а, е, и, о, у* should be sounded as in *father, cortège* (*or été*, v. footnote, p. 3), *pique, Tom, rule*.

### § 1. THE USE AND VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

The Russian language is nearly phonetic, but has kept a number of letters that have lost their separate values, e.g. *и, ѣ, в, е*; and further, like English, has a strong tonic accent, which tends to slur the preceding and following syllables.

e.g. *Wólverhampton, indúbitably, my lórd, incóm-parableness, Súdäy, commít, invúlnerability.*

In such English words the vowels all become merged in the atonic vowel, phonetically written *ə* (e.g. *a* in "villa"), and in Russian a similar phenomenon obtains.

But the Russian alphabet, *with these reservations*, has symbols assigned to every separate sound, and thus is nearly phonetic.

The Russian tonic accent is very hard to acquire, and can only be learnt by practice. A few hints can be given here and there. *In this Grammar it is marked throughout*, as in all dictionaries,

## § 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *y*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

<i>Hard:</i>	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft:</i>	я	е, ё	и, ъ	і, ѵ	ё	ю, ъ

(2) *a accented\** is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.  
Pronunciation of *a* and *я*. e.g. баба woman

*a unaccented* is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. баба.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *ə*, the *atonic* vowel. Thus баба is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented *a* is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

*я accented* is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

*я unaccented* is sounded *yě* or *yí* or *i*.

e.g. Баба-яга (Bábə-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; любятъ (lyúbit) they love.

In one instance *я* is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix *ся* (*sa*). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

*я* (*ya*) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel* *ę* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жму, жну, root *žmъ, žnъ*, and nouns in *-мя*, e.g. пламя, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav *nasals* *ǫ* and *ę*, e.g. sędzić, Russian судить (*sud'it*) to judge.

---

\* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts,

(3) э is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except  
 Pronunciation of э, е, ѣ. *э́торъ* (*étot*) this. It is sounded like the French *è* in “trève,” or the English *ai* in “hair,” but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Эмденъ Emden, поэтъ (po-ét) poet, Эйль Aisne

e and ѣ now represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian ѣ had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.\*

e.g. Екате́рина (Yekaterínə) Catherine  
 ѣмъ (yem) I eat

e is used:—

(i) When it represents *ë* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].

(ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and when it represents *ь* [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. *весь, вся* (*veś, fsya*) all.

When unaccented it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. по́ле (pólyě) field сине́е (sínuyěyě) blue

The pronouns *однѣ* and *однѣ*, *онѣ* masc., *онѣ* fem. and neuter, are both sounded *однѣ*, *онѣ* (*adní, aní*).

(4) The sound-value of *ы* is best understood as a rapid combination of German *ü* with *i*,  
 Pronunciation of ы and и. *üi*; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the *u* position, the lips in the *i* position. Roughly, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

No word can ever begin with the vowel *ы*.

\* The sound “ye” (e and ѣ) is open [*yě*] or close [*yé*] according as the following consonant is “hard” or “soft.”

и is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

і (и съ точкою = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. мнѣніе [mněnie] opinion), except in one word, міръ the world.

When и is used in diphthongs, or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in "yet," it is written ѣ and called и краткое (и short).

e.g. стаѣ (stāi) of the flocks

ѵ (ѵжица) is equivalent to и, and only used to represent the Greek *υ* in a few Church words.

*Note.*—міръ world, мѣръ peace, мѵро myrrh, сѵнодѣ synod, and Владѣміръ Vladimir (and similar names, e.g. Казимѣръ).

(5) о *accented* is sounded like the German short *o* in Pronunciation "Gott," and can be imitated by *shortening* of о and ъ. the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. ро́ръ horn

о *unaccented* is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хоро́шó	(khəřšó)	fine
пора́	(pará)	time
сло́во	(slóvə)	word

ѐ is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only occurs* in accented syllables, and *in writing is not distinguished* from е, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from е to ѐ.

e.g. ру́жьѐ	(ružó)	gun
не́сѣте	(nisyóte)	ye carry
жѐны	(žóny)	the wives
ѐлочка	(yóləčkə)	fir-tree (Christmas-tree)



(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in "rule" or "pull"; *ю* is sounded like *u* in "universe," but shorter.  
 Pronunciation of *y* and *ю*.

e.g. юбилéй (yubiléy) jubilee  
 несú (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The former indicates the hardness of a consonant; the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl) he was      вязъ (vyas) elm  
 былъ (byl') a tale      связь (svyas') tie

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in "nut," and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рѳда (родъ generation), and ротъ, ртá (ротъ mouth), терѳть to rub, тpy I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дѳвѳ, дѳнѳ' (the bottom), now дно, донѳ; рѳтѳ', рѳтá (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дѳнѳ', дѳнѳá (day), now дѳнь, днѳ [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

*Further*, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лондонѳ London      Брюссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.

## § 3. THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have:—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced:	п	т	к
„ voiced:	б	д	г
Nasals:	м	н	—
Spirants unvoiced:	ф ө	—	х
„ voiced:	в	—	—

The remainder must be separately classed:—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>		<i>Compound consonants.</i>	
Unvoiced:	с	ш	ч	ц, щ
Voiced:	з	ж	дж	—

Liquids: л and р.

## § 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.

e.g. жѣнка (*žón-ka*) little woman (пк as in pancake)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабѣ	(rap)	slave
дѣдѣ	(d'ět)	grandfather
рогѣ	(rok)	horn
островѣ	(óstrǒf)	island
розѣ	(ros)	of the roses
ложѣ	(loš')	lie

(3) When in compounds *т* precedes *д*, the first *т* is assimilated to *д*.

e.g. *отд́ать* (*ad-dát'*) to give up

(4) When in the same syllable *з* precedes *ж*, or *с* precedes *ш*, the combination is sounded like *жж*, and *шш*.

e.g. *пóзже* (*požži*) later  
*вы́сший* (*vyšši*) highest

(5) *ф* is scarcely found in original Russian words; *ф* is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as *ph* in "phonetic" has the same sound as *f* in "fine."

(6) When *к* and *г* precede *т* in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as *х* (*kh*).

e.g. *но́гтя* (*nókhtya*) of the nail  
*кто* (*khtö*) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*):—

<i>бу́дто</i>	( <i>búttə</i> )	as if
<i>сдѣ́лать</i>	( <i>zdělat'</i> )	to do
<i>отъ зарí</i>	( <i>adzarí</i> )	from the dawn
<i>прóсьба</i>	( <i>próz'bə</i> )	request
<i>сча́стье</i>	( <i>ščást'e</i> )	happiness
<i>извóзчикъ</i>	( <i>izvóščik</i> )	driver
<i>что</i>	( <i>štö</i> )	what
<i>мя́гкий</i>	( <i>myákhki</i> )	soft
<i>лѣгче</i>	( <i>lékhčě</i> )	easier

*Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.*

(8) ч before н is sounded ш.

e.g. скýчно (skúšnə) wearisome

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* д and т in -з,д,п-, -стн-; л in солнце (sóntsi or else sółntsi) sun; л final after labials.

e.g.	пóзди́й	(pózni)	late
	вля́стный	(vlásny)	powerful
	ру́бль	(rup')	rouble
	мы́сль	(mýs')	thought

## § 5. THE "HARD" AND "SOFT" CONSONANTS.

### *Preliminary.*

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and ioticised, viz. :—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	э	ы	о	у	ь
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е ъ	и і	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

*Other* consonants are *naturally* "hard" or "soft," and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

*The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.*

### (1) *The Labials.*

The labials п, б, м, в can *all* be either "hard" or "soft," and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that л is inserted after п, б, м, and в in

all "soft" nominal forms and in all verbal forms before ю and е.

e.g. лови́тъ	(lavít')	to catch
ловлю́	(lavlyú)	I catch
торгова́тъ	(tǝrgǝvát')	to trade
торговля́	(targóvlya)	trade

Otherwise п, б, м, ф, в are sounded like English p, b, m, f, v, *subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2).*

### (2) *The Dentals.*

The dentals can be used with *any* of the vowels. But they modify their pronunciation, and are changed in derivatives and verbal forms into palatals when "soft."

т, д and н "hard" are sounded as in English.

ть and дь are sounded midway between t and ċ, something like the cockney "don't-*yer* know?" "did-*yon*?"

нь is sounded *mouillé* like Spanish ñ, French and Italian *gn*.

These sounds are here denoted *t'*, *d'* and *n'*.

Thus we have:—

*Hard*: та [тэ] ты то ту ть

*Soft*: тя те ти тѣ тю ть, sounded t'a, t'e, etc.

*Soft derivatives*: че чу

e.g. плати́тъ	(plat'ít')	to pay
плачу́	(plačú)	I pay
молоти́тъ	(mǝlǝt'ít')	to thrash
молочу́	(mǝlǝčú)	I thrash
молотятъ	(mǝlót'it)	they thrash

Under identical conditions *д* changes to *ж*.

e.g.	стыдѣ́ться	(stydítsa)	to be ashamed
	стыдѣ́тся	(stydýatsa)	they are ashamed
<i>but</i>	стыжѹ́сь	(styžús')	I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions *т* became *щ*, and *д*, *жд*.

e.g.	предѣ	(přet)	before (preposition)
	прѣжде	(přězdi)	before (adverb)
	слѣд-кѣй	(slátki)	sweet, слѣще (slášče) sweeter
	родѣть	(rad'ít')	to bear, рождѣть (raždat')

### (3) *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals *к*, *г*, *х* are in Russian words *never* combined with *я*, *э*, *ы*, *ѣ*, *ю*, *ь*.

In Old Russian, before *я*, *е*, *и*, *ю*, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to *ц* and *ч*, *ж* and *ш* or *с* respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

<i>Hard:</i>	ка	ко	ку	къ			
<i>Soft:</i>	ке	ки					
<i>Soft Derivatives:</i>	ча	че	чи	чо	ор	чѣ	чу
	ор	ци				цу	

Similarly with *г* and *х*; but *г* changes to *ж*, and *х* to *ш*.

Thus:	га	ге	ги	го	гу	гъ				
Derivatives	жа	же	жи	жо	ор	жѣ	жу	жъ		
	ха	хе	хи	хо			ху	хъ		
Derivatives	ша	ше	ши	шо	ор	шѣ	шу	шъ	ор	шъ

Thus in Russian the "hard" noun волкъ (volk) wolf, has a plural волки, but an adjective волчій.

Thus, too:—

Прага (Prága) Prague, has an adjective Пражскій  
 Богъ (Bokh) God, Божество (Bažestvó) deity  
 скакать (skakát') to leap, скачú (skačú) I leap (= кю)  
 верхъ (vérkh) the top, вершина (viršínə) the height

к is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

г is always like the English *g* in "got" or "give": *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. Голландія (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word Господь (Haspód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. тогда (takhdá) then; also in Богъ God, and names of towns ending in буръ. (3) It is sounded в in the adjective gen. sing. termination -aro, -oro.

e.g. самогó	(səməvó)	of himself
дурногo	(durnóvə)	of the bad man
доброгo	(dóbrəvə)	of the good man

х is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. хата	(khata)	hut
хилый	(khíly)	feeble
сахаръ	(sákhər)	sugar

#### (4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

с, з, ш, ж, ч are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words *sword*, *zeal*, *short*, *leisure*, *church*; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

c and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When "soft" they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *ś* and *ź*.

щ is a combination of *š* and *č*, which has to be practised.

ж, ш, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

<i>Hard</i> :	жа	же	жи	жо or жё	жу	жь or жъ
	ша	ше	ши	шө or шо	шу	шь or шъ
	ца	це	цы and ци	цо	цу	цъ

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

c and з in soft derivatives change to ш and ж, e.g. здѣсь (*zd'ěs*) here, близъ (*bliz*) near, здѣшній, блížній.

<i>Soft</i> :	ча	че	чи	чо or чө	чу	чъ
	ща	ще	щи	щө or щө	щу	щъ

However, though in modern Russian the two sibilants ш, ж are accounted hard, in older Russian ш and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to ша, жа, ча and ща as to я, viz. the vowel-value changes from a to i, and not a to э.

e.g.	часовня	(česóvnyá)	oratory
	жарá	(žopá or žirá)	heat
	шагá	(šegá)	steps



ц is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented цо always becomes, and is written, це.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g.	отѣцъ	отцѣмъ	the father
	(at'éts)	(atsóm)	
	нѣмецъ	нѣмцемъ	the German
	(ně'mits)	(ně'mtsim)	

i.e. цо should have been spelt цѣ.

*Accented:* шо жѣ or жо чѣ or чо цо щѣ or цо

*Unaccented:* ше же че це ше

### (5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both лъ and љъ is quite different from that of the English *l*.

лъ\* is a guttural-sounded *l* produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

љъ is a palatal almost like the French *l* in "vil."

рљъ is trilled, more like the Scotch *r*, рљъ is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, гóродъ (grat, górat) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

\* In Polish written *l*.

Russian the dissyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. злѣто, зѣлото (zlátə, zólətə) gold; страна́ (strəná) land; страна́ (stərəná) side; храни́ть (khrańít') to keep; хорони́ть (khərónít') to bury; го́родъ (górat) city; but Петрогра́дъ (Pitragrát) Petrograd; бе́регъ (b'érek) coast; but прибре́жье (přibréži) the foreshore; мо́лодь (mólod) young; мла́дшии́ (mládši) the younger.

### § 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is Егѣпетъ (Yegípit), where егъ would in Old Russian have been written ѣгъ. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. дѣло, дѣлъ (d'ěłə, d'ěl'), -егъ, deed, a vowel o, e or ě is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is л or р.

e.g. сестра́, сестре́ръ (sistrá, sistyór) sister; игра́ (igrá) game, adjective игоро́вннй (igórny); свѣдьба́ (svád'bə) wedding, свѣде́нь (svádip); тѣтка (tyótka) aunt, тѣто́къ (tyótək); ба́снн (básnyə) fable, ба́сень (básin); пѣлка́ (páłkə) stick, пѣло́къ (páłək).

### § 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use г.

e.g. Га́мбургъ Hamburg.

For the English *th* they substitute т.

e.g. Smith Смитъ.

For German *eu, äu* they use ей.

e.g. Лейхтенбергъ Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use ю.

e.g. Брюссель Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write ё.

e.g. Гёте Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. джентльменъ gentleman, Брайтонъ Brighton,  
комильфо comme il faut, Поанкарé Poincaré,  
Тулóнъ Toulon, Жанъ Jean, Динáнь Dinant,  
Лувéнь Louvain, Бржежáнь Brzeżań.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely ъ, ь, й, а, я, except о and е, are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. Бэкономъ by Васон, въ Лувéнѣ in Louvain,  
въ Динáнѣ at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

### § 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *й*; and are ай, йй, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; ей and ѳй like *ey* in "grey," but longer; ой, ёй almost as English "boy"; and уй, юй like *ui* in "bruided."

The digraph ай denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. Брауншвейгъ Браунъ Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the а and the у are separate vowels.

e.g. есаулъ a Cossack captain. Cf. in French "caoutchouc."

§ 9. THE CHANGE OF *e* TO *ë*.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diæresis over *e* is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of *e* as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented *e* preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced *ë*.

e.g. село (síló) village, plural сѣла, сѣль (sóla, sól);  
 плачетъ (pláčít) he weeps, but растётъ (rastýót)  
 he grows; ружье (ružó) gun; смерть (smert')  
 death; ёлочка (yólǎčkə), ёлка (yólkə) fir-  
 tree; мёртвый (myórtvy) dead; конёмъ  
 (kónyóm) by the horse; наше (náši) our  
 (neut. nom. sing.); твоё (tvayó) thy (neut.  
 nom. sing.).

Exceptions:—

*e* accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced *ë*—

(1) In words ending in -ецъ, e.g. купецъ (kupéts) merchant. This is because *ц* was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival termination -скій, which is unaccented and was originally preceded by *ь*, softening the consonant.

e.g. жена́ (žíná) wife, plur. жены́ (žóny), adj.  
 жѣнскій (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. апте́ка	(apt'ékə)	apothecary's shop
биле́тъ	(bilét)	ticket
деше́па	(d'epéšə)	despatch

(4) In words from Church Slavonic.

e.g. крѣсть (krĕst) cross

нёбо (nébø) heaven, but нёбо palate of mouth

надѣжда (nad'ěždø) hope, but надѣжа (popularly)

And in some few other words, such as дѣрзкій bold, дѣрзость boldness, сквѣрный nasty, учебный educational, левъ lion (but Лѣвъ the name Leo), предметъ subject.

*These words may also be taken as an exercise in the application of the rules regarding pronunciation.*

(5) In some words where e should be spelt ѣ, which never undergoes this change, cf. § 2 (3).

e.g. блескъ brightness, мелкій little, мелочь trifle, вредъ damage

(6) The preposition безъ without, which is generally proclitic.

e.g. безъ щитá (bišščitá) without a shield

(7) In the words верхъ the top, цѣрковь church, пѣрвый first, четвѣргъ Thursday, чѣрпать to draw up, мѣркнуть to grow dusk, стѣрва carrion, серпъ sickle, верба willow, сѣрдце heart, исчѣзъ vanished, ужѣ already, вообще in general.

ě remains before a soft consonant:—

(1) In declensions and conjugations where other forms are hard and ě is regular.

e.g. несѣшь                    несѣтъ, несѣмъ, несѣте

thou carriest    he, we, ye carry

утѣсь cliff, на утѣсь on the cliff

so берѣза birch-tree, въ берѣзѣ in the birch.

(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in я, like the hard nouns.

e.g. грозóю (грозá storm)

землѣю (землá earth)

But моéю, твоéю, своéю, with е not ё.

Also before the adjectival termination -кiй. As explained in § 33 (8), this -кiй is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form -кой, and, this к being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, шека́ cheek, щёки cheeks (because after gutturals ы is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words ѣ becomes ѣ̇, like е, ё:—

звѣздá star звѣзды (plural)

гнѣздó nest гнѣзда (plural)

приобрѣстí to obtain приобрѣмъ\* (past tense)

цвѣстí to bloom цвѣмъ (past tense)

сѣдлó saddle сѣдла (plural)

надѣвáть to dress надѣванъ (past part. pass.)

позѣвывáть to yawn

запечатлѣнъ impressed

смѣтка wits

*These words are merely misspelt.*

In two words я is sounded ё:—

трясь he shook, sounded трѣсь

запрягъ he yoked (his horse), sounded запрѣгъ

Lastly, ея́, the genitive of она́ she, is sometimes pronounced еѣ like the accusative (which is ee, sounded iyó).

\* And other compounds of this verb.

## ACCIDENCE.

## § 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (ча́сти рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are :—

<i>Declined</i>	{	(1) Nouns, <i>и́мя существи́тельное</i>
		(2) Adjectives, <i>и́мя прилагáтельное</i>
		(3) Pronouns, <i>мѣстоимѣнiе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>	(4) Verbs, <i>глаго́ль</i>	
<i>Declined</i>	(5) Numerals, <i>и́мя числи́тельное</i>	
<i>Uninflected</i>	{	(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣ́чiе</i>
		(7) Prepositions, <i>предло́гъ</i>
		(8) Conjunctions, <i>сою́зъ</i>
		(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣтiе</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *одинъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special* form for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скій*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present ; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.

## THE NOUN (имя существительное).

## § 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (роды мужескій, женскій, средній). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(α) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine (“natural” gender).

e.g. Пв́анъ John, Пётъ Peter, В́анька Johnny, вое́да general, сирот́а orphan (masc. or fem.).

(β) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination (“natural” and “grammatical” gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ). Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in т, ь and ѣ are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. столъ	table	шрифтъ	type
Царь	Tsar	университѣтъ	university
б́азисъ	basis	конь	horse
кр́зисъ	crisis	слопъ	elephant
	соловѣѣ	nightingale	

(ii) Nouns ending in о, е, ѳ are neuter.

e.g. по́ле	field	со́лнце	sun
дѣ́ло	affair	бѣ́лье	linen



(iii) Words ending in а, я, ь are feminine, *despite foreign etymology.*

e.g. рука́ hand      пу́ля bullet  
 дра́ма drama (τὸ δράμα, le drame, das Drama,  
 etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in а and я of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. мужчи́на male      слуга́ man-servant  
 дядя́ uncle      Пётя́ Peter (short for Пётръ)  
 юноша́ youth      уби́йца murderer (masc. or fem.)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Terminations:</i>	ь	а	о
	ь	я	е
	и	ь	мя

## § 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines* in ть, ь and и, *neuters* in о, ё, е.

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines* in а and я.

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(а) One masculine word, путь path.

(β) Many feminines, principally abstracts in -ость, e.g. ско́рость speed.

(γ) Two relics of older declensions:

ма́ть, ма́тери, cf. *mater, matris*, mother  
 дочь, до́чери daughter

## (δ) Neuters in мя (мени).

e.g. *ѣмя, ѣмени* name, cf. Latin *nōmen, nōminis*; *сѣмя, сѣмени* seed, cf. Latin *sēmen, sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an 'U' declension (e.g. *manus, manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in y of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination -овъ.

## § 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

- |                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Nominative,                | Именительный падежь |
| (2) Vocative,                  | Звательный „        |
| (3) Accusative,                | Винительный „       |
| (4) Genitive,                  | Родительный „       |
| (5) Dative,                    | Дательный „         |
| (6) Instrumental,              | Творительный „      |
| (7) Locative or Prepositional, | Предложный падежь   |

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. *Бо́же* from *Богъ* God, *Христѣ* from *Христосъ* Christ, *Господи* from *Господь* Lord, *Иисусе* from *Иисусъ* Jesus, *отче* from *отець* father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in a and я.

- e.g. *Я видѣлъ Царя́ (genitive) и Цари́цу.*  
I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.  
*Учи́тель проче́лъ ва́ше сочи́неніе.*  
The teacher read your work.

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in а and я), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun.

e.g. Я не окóнчилъ своѣй рабóты.

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning "nothing of my work."

Я никогда́ не слыхáль такúхъ скáзокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the "prepositional."

e.g. Въ селѣ́ (fsilě) in the village.

Я говорíлъ о Николаѣ́ (ya gɔvɔrítʃ anikɔláye).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

#### § 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (едíнственное числó, мнóжественное числó). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in ъ, ь, ѱ, and feminines in а, я; neuters in о, е, ё only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in а, я, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in п, of the third declension, is slightly different.

## § 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are "hard" or "soft" throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in "hard" or "soft" vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the *н* declension, the third, are naturally all "soft."

## SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine.		Neuter.		Feminine.		Fem.	Neut.
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.		
<i>Sing.</i>								
Nom.	ъ	ь и	о	е ё	а	я	ь	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ь	мя
Gen.	а [у]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	меня
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	меня
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою	ею	ію	менемъ
Loc.	ѣ [ѣ]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
<i>Plur.</i>								
Nom.	ы	и	а	я	ы	и	и	мена
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мена
Gen.	овъ ей	евъ ей	ъ	ей	ъ	ь ей	ей	мѣль
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	ямъ	менамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ьми	месями
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	яхъ	менахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence,

§ 16. EXAMPLES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN THE  
FIRST DECLENSION (пѣрвое склoneнiе).

*Singular.*

	tooth	work	cry
N. V.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Acc.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Gen.	зуба	трудá	кри́ка
Dat.	зубу	трудú	кри́ку
Instr.	зубомъ	трудомъ	кри́комъ
Loc.	зубѣ	трудѣ	кри́кѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	зубы	труды́	крики
Acc.	зубы	труды́	крики
Gen.	зубо́въ	трудо́въ	крико́въ
Dat.	зуба́мъ	трудáмъ	кри́камъ
Instr.	зуба́ми	трудáми	кри́ками
Loc.	зуба́хъ	трудáхъ	кри́кахъ

*Singular.*

	key	a German	march
N. V.	ключъ	нѣмецъ	маршъ
Acc.	ключъ	нѣмца	маршъ
Gen.	ключа́	нѣмца	ма́рша
Dat.	ключу́	нѣмцу	ма́ршу
Instr.	ключомъ	нѣмцемъ	ма́ршемъ
Loc.	ключѣ	нѣмцѣ	ма́ршѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	ключи́	нѣмцы	ма́рши
Acc.	ключи́	нѣмцевъ	ма́рши
Gen.	ключе́й	нѣмцевъ	ма́ршей
Dat.	ключа́мъ	нѣмцамъ	ма́ршамъ
Instr.	ключа́ми	нѣмцами	ма́ршами
Loc.	ключа́хъ	нѣмцахъ	ма́рсахъ

These six examples illustrate regular forms in "hard" consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *ключамъ* is sounded *klučám*, *марши* *máršy*, etc.

*Examples of Weak Stems.*

	hero	horse	battle	knife (ж originally soft)
N. V.	геро́й	ко́нь	бо́й	но́жь
Acc.	геро́я	ко́ня	бо́й	но́жь
Gen.	геро́я	ко́ня	бо́я	но́жа
Dat.	геро́ю	ко́ню	бо́ю	но́жy
Instr.	геро́емъ	ко́немъ	бо́емъ	но́жомъ
Loc.	геро́ѣ	ко́нѣ	бо́ѣ	но́жѣ
<i>Plural.</i>				
N. V.	геро́и	ко́ни	бо́и	но́жи
Acc.	геро́евъ	ко́ней	бо́и	но́жи
Gen.	геро́евъ	ко́ней	боёвъ	но́жеи
Dat.	геро́ямъ	ко́нямъ	бо́ймъ	но́жамъ
Instr.	геро́ями	ко́нями	бо́ями	но́жами
Loc.	геро́яхъ	ко́няхъ	бо́яхъ	но́жахъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST  
DECLENSION.

*Hard Stems.*

	yoke	village	quality
N. V. A.	ѣго	село́	ка́чество
Gen.	ѣга	села́	ка́чества
Dat.	ѣгу	селу́	ка́честву
Instr.	ѣгомъ	село́мъ	ка́чествомъ
Loc.	ѣгѣ	селѣ	ка́чествѣ

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	и́га	се́ла	ка́чества
Gen.	и́гъ	се́ль	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	се́ламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	се́лами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	се́лахъ	ка́чествахъ

*Soft and Sibilant Stems.**Singular.*

	sea	school
N. V. A.	мо́ре	учи́лище
Gen.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Dat.	мо́рю	учи́лищу
Instr.	мо́ремъ	учи́лищемъ
Loc.	мо́рѣ	учи́лищѣ

*Plural.*

N. V. A.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Gen.	мо́рей	учи́лищъ
Dat.	мо́ря́мъ	учи́лищамъ
Instr.	мо́ря́ми	учи́лищами
Loc.	мо́ря́хъ	учи́лищахъ

*Singular.*

	gun	knowledge
N. V. A.	ружьѣ́	зна́нiе
Gen.	ружьѣ́я	зна́нiя
Dat.	ружьѣ́ю	зна́нiю
Instr.	ружьѣ́емъ	зна́нiемъ
Loc.	ружьѣ́ѣ	зна́нiи

*Plural.*

N. V. A.	ру́жья	зна́нiя
Gen.	ру́жей	зна́нiй
Dat.	ру́жьямъ	зна́нiямъ
Instr.	ру́жьями	зна́нiями
Loc.	ру́жьяхъ	зна́нiяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второе склонение) IN *a* AND *я*.

The scheme for these nouns is:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	<i>a</i>	<i>я</i>	<i>ы</i>	<i>я</i>
Acc.	<i>у</i>	<i>ю</i>	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	<i>ы</i>	<i>я</i>	<i>ь</i>	<i>я</i>
Dat.	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>амъ</i>	<i>ямъ</i>
Instr.	<i>ою ои* ею еи*</i>		<i>ами</i>	<i>ями</i>
Loc.	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ѣ</i>	<i>ахъ</i>	<i>яхъ</i>

Examples:—

	<i>Singular.</i>				
	Hard.	Hard.	Soft.	Sibilant.	
N. V.	widow	hand	bullet	soul	
Acc.	вдовá	руká	пу́ля	душа́	
Gen.	вдовы́	руки́	пу́ли	души́	
Instr.	вдово́ю	руко́ю	пу́лею	душо́ю	
D. L.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́лѣ	душѣ́	
		<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V.	вдóвы	ру́ки	пу́ли	ду́ши	
Acc.	вдовѣ́	ру́ки	пу́ли	душѣ́	
Gen.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́ль	душѣ́	
Dat.	вдова́мъ	рука́мъ	пу́лямъ	душáмъ	
Instr.	вдова́ми	рука́ми	пу́лями	душáми	
Loc.	вдова́хъ	рука́хъ	пу́ляхъ	душáхъ	
		<i>Singular.</i>			
	Sibilant.	Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.	
N. V.	candle	tear	empress	food †	
Acc.	свѣ́чá	слезá	царíца	пíща	
Gen.	свѣ́чи	слезá	царíцы	пíщи	
Instr.	{ свѣ́чéю } { свѣ́чóю }	слезóю	царíцею	пíщею	
D. L.	свѣ́чѣ́	слезѣ́	царíцѣ́	пíщѣ́	

\* Contracted form.

† No plural.



*Plural.*

N. V.	свѣчѣ	слѣзы	царѣцы
Acc.	свѣчѣ	слѣзы	царѣцѣ
Gen.	свѣчѣ	слѣзѣ	царѣцѣ
Dat.	свѣчѣмъ	слѣзѣмъ	царѣцамъ
Instr.	свѣчѣми	слѣзѣми	царѣцами
Loc.	свѣчѣхъ	слѣзѣхъ	царѣцахъ

*For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).*

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.**Singular.*

	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	земля́	мо́лнія	семья́
Acc.	зе́млю	мо́лнію	семью́
Gen.	земли́	мо́лніи	семьи́
Instr.	земле́ю	мо́лнією	семье́ю
D. L.	землѣ́	мо́лніи	семье́

*Plural.*

N. V.	зе́мля	мо́лніи	се́мьи
Acc.	зе́мля	мо́лніи	се́мей
Gen.	земель	мо́лній	се́мей
Dat.	земля́мъ	мо́лніямъ	се́мья́мъ
Instr.	земля́ми	мо́лніями	се́мья́ми
Loc.	земля́хъ	мо́лніяхъ	се́мья́хъ

## Examples of Masc. in а, я.

*Singular.*

	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	ста́роста elder	дѣ́дя uncle
Acc.	ста́росту	дѣ́дю
Gen.	ста́росты	дѣ́ди
Instr.	ста́ростою	дѣ́дею
D. L.	ста́ростѣ́	дѣ́дѣ́

<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	ста́росты	дѣди
Acc.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Gen.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Dat.	ста́ростамъ	дѣдямъ
Instr.	ста́ростами	дѣдями
Loc.	ста́ростахъ	дѣдяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

### § 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трѣтье склонѣнiе): NOUNS IN *и* and *мя*.

These nouns are always soft; most of the terminations are in *и*.\*

#### MASCULINE.

Only one example survives:—

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	пу́ть path	N. V. A.	пу́ти
G. D. L.	пу́ти	Gen.	путѣй
Instr.	пу́тёмъ	Dat.	путѣмъ
		Instr.	путѣми
		Loc.	путѣхъ

Formerly there were others of this type; e.g. *день* day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But "after midday" is "полудни" (*рѣрэлудни*); *дни* being the old genitive.

### § 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN *и*: FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like *конь* horse.

---

\* Just like the Latin *turris*; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.	<i>Singular.</i>		
	bone	horse	door
N. V.	кость	лошадь	дверь
Acc.	кость	лошадь	
Gen.	кости	лошади	Declined like кость
Dat.	кости	лошади	
Loc.	кости	лошади	
Instr.	костьюю	лошадью	
	костію	лошадію	
	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	кости	лошади	Declined like кость
Acc.	кости	лошадѣй	
Gen.	костѣй	лошадѣй	
Dat.	костѣмъ	лошадѣмъ	
Instr.	костѣми	лошадѣми	
Loc.	костѣхъ	лошадѣхъ	
	<i>Singular.</i>		
	fortress	care	
N. V.	крѣпость	осторожность	
Acc.	крѣпость	осторожность	
Gen.	крѣпости	осторожности	
Dat.	брѣпости	осторожности	
Loc.	крѣпости	осторожности	
Instr.	крѣпостью	осторожностью	
	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	крѣпости	—	
Acc.	крѣпости	—	
Gen.	крѣпостѣй	—	
Dat.	крѣпостѣмъ	—	
Instr.	крѣпостѣми	—	
Loc.	крѣпостѣхъ	—	

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine, has звѣрѣми instr. plural, besides звѣрами.

§ 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN **н**: NEUTERS IN **мя**.  
Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen, nōminis, sēmen, sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	banner	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	и́мя	зна́мя	плéмя	сѣ́мя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	и́мени	зна́мени		
Instr.	и́менемъ	зна́менемъ		
<i>Plur.</i>			Like и́мя	Like и́мя, but gen. plural сѣ́мянъ
Nom. Voc. Acc.	име́нá	знаме́на		
Gen.	имѣ́нъ	знаме́нъ		
Dat.	име́намъ	знаме́намъ		
Instr.	име́нами	знаме́нами		
Loc.	име́нахъ	знаме́нахъ		

§ 22. THIRD DECLENSION: REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine*: There are only two.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	mother	daughter
Nom. Voc.	ма́ть	до́чь
A. G. D. L.	ма́тери	до́чери
Instr.	ма́терью	до́черью
	<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. Voc.	ма́тери	до́чери
Acc. Gen.	матерéй	дочерéй
Dat.	матеря́мъ	дочеря́мъ
Instr.	{ матеря́ми	{ дочеря́ми
	{ матерья́ми	{ дочерья́ми
Loc.	матеря́хъ	дочеря́хъ

Cf. *māter, mātris*; *μήτηρ, μητρός*; *θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός*.

\* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.

(2) *Neuter*: There is only one, and this noun is irregular.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	child		children
Nom. Voc. Acc.	дитя́	Nom. Voc.	дѣти
Gen. Dat. Loc.	дитя́ти	Acc. Gen.	дѣте́й
Instr.	дитя́тею	Dat.	дѣтямъ
		Instr.	дѣтьми́
			(and дѣтьми)
		Loc.	дѣтяхъ

§ 23. (1) The foregoing sections, 16 to 22, illustrate the rules of Russian declension.

Some space must still be devoted to *apparent* exceptions (for euphonic reasons), to *true* exceptions (which are very few), and the principles of the accentuation in each class.

It is assumed that the reader has mastered §§ 2-6 and § 9, which supply the phonetic basis, the fundamental laws of Russian orthography.

(2) Some nouns are used only in the plural. These are masculine, feminine or neuter, according as their genitive assigns them to one or other of the declensions.

e.g. но́жницы, но́жницъ, etc., fem., scissors  
 щипцы́, щипцо́въ, etc., masc., pincers  
 воро́та, воро́тъ, etc., neut., gates

(3) Some nouns are indeclinable; namely, those which do *not* end in ь, ѣ, и, а, я (m. and f.), and о, е (neut.). Such are (i) a few Russian words, e.g. ко́фе coffee. (ii) Many foreign words, especially proper names; e.g. Са́рти Sarti, Пе́трѹччо Petruccio, Лу́бѣ Loubet, Ма́ртелло Martello. The case in which these nouns stand must be understood from the context; e.g. въ поэ́зию Ло́нгфелло in

Longfellow's poetry, во время президентства Карно́ in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Репанъ Repan, Диванъ Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопэнъ Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Рѣчь сэра Эдуарда Грѣя, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Гре́й).

§ 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "U," e.g. *mānus, manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly *unaccented* genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. ча́ю from чай tea  
 са́хару from са́харъ sugar  
 наро́ду from наро́дъ people

e.g. ча́шка ча́ю a cup of tea, but э́тотъ родъ са́хара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мно́го наро́ду many people, ха́ра́ктеръ а́нглийскаго наро́да the character of the English people.

Also in the phrases:—

свѣ́рху from above  
 свѣ́зду from beneath  
 безъ то́лку senseless  
 изъ вѣ́ду out of sight

and a few others.

(β) Some *monosyllables* have an *accented* locative in -ý, -ió, used with въ in, на on.

e.g. въ лѣсу in the forest, but при лѣсѣ at the wood  
 въ годý in the year  
 въ бою in the fight  
 на краю on the edge  
 на льдý on the ice  
 въ снѣгý in the snow  
 въ раю in Paradise  
 на берегý on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) сынъ son, кумъ godfather, and others, insert the syllable -ов- into the plural.

e.g. [сынѣ sons (poetical)]	сыновѣ
кумъ godfather	кумовѣ
зять son-in-law	зятевѣ (зятѣ)
сватъ match-maker	сватовѣ

(δ) It is in the nouns in “u” that the genitive plural -овъ originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in -ья; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. братъ brother, братѣя (gen. братевѣ, dat. братѣямъ, instr. братѣями, loc. братѣяхъ)  
 камень stone, камѣнья stones, камни single stones  
 бросать камнями, to throw stones  
 стулъ a chair, стúлья  
 сукъ a bough, сúчья [v. § 5 (3).]  
 уголь coal, úголья

зубъ tooth, зѹбья teeth (of a machine), зѹбы teeth (of a man)

листь leaf, листьа leaves of a tree, листьы (leaves of paper)

другъ friend, друзья́ (gen. друзей́)

князь prince, кивзья́ (gen. князей́)

мужъ husband, мужья́ (gen. мужей́)

зять son-in-law, зятья́ (gen. зятей́), also зятевя́

деверь the husband's brother, деверья́ (gen. деверьевъ and деверей́)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -á.

e.g. рукавъ	sleeve	рукава́
бе́регъ	shore	берега́
глазь	eye	глаза́
пóлогъ	bed-canopy	полога́
рогъ	horn	рога́
кóлоколъ	bell	колокола́

It will be observed most of these are essentially *duals* in meaning; *this á is the old dual, Nom. and Acc.* Cf. § 26 (5) (с).

This á ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g. гóродъ	town	городá
лѣсъ	wood	лѣса́
гóлосъ	voice	голосá
домъ	house	дома́

as well as most loan-words in -ерь and -оръ—

e.g. дóкторъ	doctor	доктора́
профéссоръ	professor	профессора́
кучерь	coachman	кучера́
<i>but</i> актёръ	actor (French <i>acteur</i> )	актёры
имперáторъ	Emperor	имперáторы



Other instances are :—

образъ	shapes	образы	shapes	образá	images
хлѣбъ	bread	хлѣбы	loaves	хлѣбá	corn
цвѣтъ	colour	цвѣты	flowers	цвѣтá	colours
мѣхъ	bellows	мѣхи			
мѣхъ	fur	мѣхá			
орденъ	the order	ордены	the orders (e.g. religious)	орденá	the orders (decorations)

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ь, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ь still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царí, царь'ь, which became царь'и, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ь and ъ had become mute.

So, too, words in -жъ, -а, -шъ (e.g. ножъ knife, ножá, ножей), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ were all originally soft.

But й is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строй organization, строивъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ь.

e.g.	волюсь	hair	Gen. plur. волюсь
	разъ	time (so many times)	разъ
	сапогъ	boot	сапогъ
	драгунъ	dragoon	драгунъ
	түрокъ	Turk	түрокъ
	гренадёръ	grenadier	гренадёръ
	глазь	eye	глазь
	рѣкрутъ	recruit	рѣкрутъ

as well as all those which form their nominative singular in *-инъ*, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. фунтъ a pound (= .90 lb. avoirdupois)

сажѣнь a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: фунтъ, сажѣнь, or сажѣнь, or сажѣней.

(5) Nom. sing. in *-инъ*.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form *-инъ* [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the *-инъ* in the plural, forming the nom. plural in *-e* or *-a*. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Рѣмлянинъ	христiанѣинъ	Англичѣнинъ
Gen. sing.	Рѣмлянина	христiанѣина	Англичѣнина
Nom. plur.	Рѣмляне	христiанѣ	Англичѣне
Gen. plur.	Рѣмлянъ	христiанъ	Англичѣнъ
	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татáринъ	бáринъ	шúринъ
Gen. sing.	татáрина	бáрина	шúрина
Nom. plur.	{ татáры }	бáре	шурýя
Gen. plur.	татáръ	баръ	шурѣвъ

хозѣинъ (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, хозѣинъ, хозѣина, etc.

<i>Plural</i>	Nom. Voc.	хозѣева [cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]
	„ Acc. Gen.	хозѣевъ
	„ Dat. Instr. Loc.	хозѣев-, амъ, ами, ахъ

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in *-инъ* used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above,

## (6) Irregular formations.

*Singular.*

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христóсь	Госпóдь (Насрóд')
Voc.	Христé	Гóсподи
Gen.	Христá	Гóспода
Dat.	Христú	Гóсподу
Instr.	Христóмъ	Гóсподомъ
Loc.	Христѣ	Гóсподѣ

neighbour

devil

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосѣдъ	сосѣди	чортъ*	чѣрти
Acc.	сосѣда	сосѣдей	чорта	чертѣй
Gen.	etc.		чорта	Like царь,
Dat.			чорту	soft stem.
Instr.			чортомъ	
Loc.		Like царь, soft stem.	чортѣ	

человѣкъ, man (in general: мужъ husband, мужчи́на male), generally forms its plural in люди (declined like a plural of an и stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is человѣкъ, e.g. двáдцать человѣкъ twenty men.

## § 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative; but, as the original nominative termination ѣ has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward, i.e. on to the terminations.

\* Not to be confused with черта (fem.) feature.

E.g. **человѣкъ** man, **сарайъ** barn, **братъ** brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the stem; e.g. **человѣкомъ**, **сарайю**, **брата**.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination **ъ**, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in **-ицъ**, e.g. **Карамзицъ** Karamzin.
- (2) All words in **-ецъ**, e.g. **купецъ** merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in **-акъ**,\* **-икъ**, **-якъ**, **-окъ**, **-ежъ**, **-ачъ**; e.g. **дуракъ** fool, **старикъ** old man, **надѣжъ** case, **палачъ** executioner, **кусокъ** morsel, **скрипачъ** fiddler, **тюфякъ** mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in **-уиъ**, **-аръ** (except **государъ** Lord, as a royal title, **государя**), **-ирь**, **-иръ**, and the months in **-брь**; e.g. **девятого октябрия** on the 9th October, **табуиъ** herd of horses, **столяръ** carpenter, **пузырь** bellows, **пибиръ** ginger; but **панцырь** (**панцыря**) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as **столъ** table, **быкъ** ox, **женихъ** bridegroom, **плодъ** fruit, **полкъ** regiment, **языкъ** tongue, **пѣтухъ** cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. **сады** gardens, **чины** ranks, **шаги** steps.

---

\* Cf. the Greek accent *αρός, ιρός*.

III. Thirdly, some words throw the accent forward on to the termination in the genitive plural and following cases.

e.g.	богъ	god	богѡвъ
	воръ	thief	ворами
	гвоздь	nail	гвоздѣми
	кру́гъ	circle	кругамъ
	лѣбедь	swan	о лебедѣхъ

In all cases the original accent on the nominative must be learnt from the dictionary or a teacher; *as a general rule, a masculine noun that throws its accent forward on the genitive singular throws it forward on to all the terminations; and a noun not accented on the last syllable retains the same accent throughout.*

This section must be read subject to all the rules stated in § 24 and § 9.

#### § 26. REMARKS ON THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Except, in so far as the masculine nouns have more inflections, the special remarks in § 24 apply to neuters as well.

(1) In § 24 (4) it was observed that all masculine nouns of the first declension ending in a consonant + ь or -жъ, -шъ, -щъ, -чъ (which were all originally soft, v. § 5 (4)), form the genitive plural in -еи. The same applies to all soft neuter nouns in -е, and the same arguments hold good.

e.g. поле field полеи

But, with this difference, neuters in -цѡ, -це, -щѡ, -ще, -шѡ, -ше, -чѡ, -че, form the genitive plural in ѣ.

e.g.	плечѡ	shoulder	плечѣ	[v. also § 26 (5) (β).]
	жиліще	home	жиліщѣ	
	лицѡ	face	лицѣ	

Nouns in -ѣ form the genitive plural in -ей, the reason being that the ѣ is inserted to divide the syllables, so that such words come under the general rule of neuters ending in ѣ.

e.g.	ружьѣ	gun	ружьей
	питьѣ	drink	питьей

(2) Neuters in -іе, and feminines in -ія (these terminations being unaccented) spell the ѣ terminations as they are sounded, viz. и.

e.g.	понимáвіе	the understanding
	Лос. о понимáвіи	

These nouns in -іе are very common, being the regular verbal nouns formed from the infinitives to express the abstract idea of the verb.

e.g.	вы́разитѣ	to express,	выражéніе	the expressing
	имѣ́тъ	to own,	имѣ́ніе	the estate

The *genitive plural* in nouns in -іе and -ія is -іѣ.

e.g.	Я не хочú егѡ имѣ́ній
	Ya ne khačú yivѡ iměni
	I do not desire his property

In poetry and colloquial speech such nouns are contracted, e.g. желáнѣе for желáніе,

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in *ьевъ*, e.g. *платье* clothing, *платьевъ*; *кúшанье* food, *кúшаньевъ*; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being *-ѣ*, plural *-ья*.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals *друзья́*, *братья́* [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

*Augmentative* nouns in *-ище*, e.g. *село́* village, *сели́ще* a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. *конь*. Thus *сели́щи*, *сели́щей*, etc. But *кладби́ще*, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in *-ко*.

e.g. *словéчко* a little word

Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc. *словéчки*

Gen. *словéчекъ* [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, *очко́*, *очки́* (little eyes), now spectacles; *очко́въ*, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

<i>со́лнце</i> sun	<i>со́лнца</i> and <i>-ы</i>	<i>со́лнцевъ</i>
<i>дно́</i> bottom	<i>дны́</i> ( <i>до́пья</i> )	<i>донь</i> ( <i>до́ньевъ</i> )
<i>я́блоко</i> apple	<i>я́блоки</i>	<i>я́блокъ</i> or <i>я́блоковъ</i>

(4) *Plurals in -ья* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g. <i>дре́во</i>	tree	<i>дерéвья</i>
<i>перо́</i>	feather	<i>пéрья</i>
<i>крыло́</i>	wing	<i>кры́лья</i>

*Observe.*—колѣно, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) колѣна, колѣнь family or race; (2) колѣни, колѣвей knees; (3) колѣнья, колѣньевъ knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (b) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

Небо heaven, чудо miracle, слово word, тѣло body, колѣо wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *γένος, γένους (γένεσος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: словесный literary, небесный heavenly, чудесный wonderful, тѣлесный corporeal, and колѣсный pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: чудо, чудеса, чудесь [not чудёсь, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and небо, небеса, небесь [not небёсь].

The modern Russian for wheel is колесо, plural колёса.

Слово and тѣло are regular like дѣло.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural -ята is still used, the singular being -ёнокъ.

e.g. котёнокъ	kitten	котята, котятъ
жеребёнокъ	colt	жеребята, жеребятъ
волчёнокъ	wolf-cub	волчата, волчатъ

[v. § 5 (3).]

So, too, цыплята chickens, ребята children (used as the plural of ребёнокъ), etc., and also внукъ grandson, внучата grand-children.



(β) *Dual forms.*

о́ко	eye (poetical only)	о́чи, о́чѣй
у́хо	ear	у́ши, уше́й
колѣ́но	knee	колѣ́ни, колѣ́ней
сто	one hundred	двѣ́сти two hundred
плечо́	shoulder	плѣ́чи, плечѣ

## § 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

*As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.*

*Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.*

e.g.	тѣ́ло	body	тѣ́ла
	мо́ре	sea	моря́
	се́ло	village	се́ла [v. § 9.]
	ребро́	rib	рёбра
	де́рево	tree	дерёвья
	пи́сьмо	letter	пи́сьма, пи́семъ
	пра́во	right	права́
	се́рдце	heart	сердца́
Ехсерт	блю́до	dish	блю́да
	го́рло	throat	го́рла

*Trisyllabic* nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.

e.g.	колесо́	wheel	колёса
	полотно́	cloth	полотна́
	зе́ркало	mirror	зеркала́, зе́ркаль от зеркала́
	кру́жево	lace	кружева́, кру́жевъ
	озе́ро	lake	озёра

Derivative nouns in -ie, -ство, retain the same accent.

e.g. существó	being	существо́ва
знáвiе	knowledge	знáвiя
правѣтельство	government	правѣтельства

## § 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in -я and -ча, -ша and -жа, regularly form the genitive plural in -ь and -чь, and the instrumental singular in -ёю, -ею; -чюю, -чюю; -шюю, -шею; -жюю, -жею. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in -ца preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular -цюю, -цею; genitive plural -ць.

But nouns in -ча, -жа, -ша, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in -ей: and the same applies to nouns in -ща.

e.g. вѣкша	squirrel	вѣкшей
саранча́	locust	саранчѣй
Similarly: дѣдѣя	uncle	дѣдѣй
ноздри́	nostril	ноздрей
дóля	lot	до́ль and до́лей
за́ря	dawn*	зо́рь and за́рей

Nouns in -ья also have a genitive plural in -ей *regularly*, when accented; -ий unaccented.

e.g. лгу́нья	liar	лгу́ний
статья́	article	статѣй
гóбья	guest (fem.)	гóбтей
сви́нья	pig	сви́ней

\* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular -ою, -ею is contracted to -оіи and -еіи, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. дѣдѣ uncle, юноша youth, Саша diminutive of Александръ, Бѣля diminutive of Николай, Пѣтя diminutive of Пѣтръ, слуга servant (feminine form служанка), сирота orphan, masc. or fem. *according to meaning*, судья judge, бродяга vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in -ія, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. нація nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in -іе [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ъ forms are written and sounded и.

e.g. армія army, въ арміи in the army, арміи genitive plural; so, too, Армѣнія Armenia, Англія England, Франція France, etc.

*Note.*—Марія, о Маріи; but Марья, о Марьѣ, Mary.

## § 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.

Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as борода́ beard, голова́ head (contrast глава́ chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. вдова́	widow	вдо́вы
волна́	wave	во́лны
игра́	game	и́гры
ре́ка	river	ре́ки
судя́	judge	су́ды
слуга́	servant	слу́ги
стрѣла́	arrow	стрѣ́лы
струна́	string	стру́ны
	(e.g. of violin)	
узда́	reins	у́зды

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. рука́	hand	ру́ку, ру́ки
(Occasionally, by analogy, жена́мъ, жена́ми, жена́хъ ; се́страмъ, зе́млямъ, звѣзда́мъ are mistakenly used.)		
борода́	beard	боро́ду, боро́ды
вода́	water	во́ду, во́ды
нога́	foot	но́гу, но́ги

## § 30. REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The original nouns belonging to this class are few in number, but very common in use. Some of them have both Slavonic and Russian forms [v. § 5 (5)].

e.g. во́лють a rural district, вла́сть power.\*

The derivative nouns in -ость are innumerable, and abstract nouns are mostly created with this termination. All such derivative nouns accent the root-syllable. [v. § 98, V.]

e.g. ста́ръ old, ста́рость old age.

(1) There is a special accented locative ending in *и́*, used *only* after *на* and *въ* [cf. § 24 (1)].

e.g. гру́дь breast, на груди́; вѣ́твь twig, на вѣтви́;  
сте́пь steppe, въ степи́; Русь Russia (poetical,  
usual word Росси́я), на Руси́.

(2) Це́рковь church, has in the dat., instr., and loc. plural a for *я*.

i.e. церквѣ́мъ, -ѣ́ми, -ѣ́хъ

## § 31. ACCENTUATION OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The accentuation follows the paradigms in § 20; but some reservations must be made.

(1) Many of these nouns accent the termination on the *dative*, *instrumental*, and *locative plural*.

e.g. до́лжность duty, должностѣ́мъ, -ѣ́ми, -ѣ́хъ

---

\* Such feminines in -ость and -чь correspond etymologically with the English forms "might," "draught," German "Wacht," etc.

(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	рѣчь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	стень	steppe		
честь	honour	тѣнь	shadow		
ось	axle	цѣпь*	chain		

### § 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS o, e, ë.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of ъ and ь, as short *ö* and *ī*, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as *в*, *р* and *л*) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ъ and ь when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was дѣн-ь'. When ь became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to *e*; hence the nominative дѣнь, genitive днѣ. Similarly днѡ bottom, gen. pl. днѡнъ (for дѣн-ь').

This law may be tabulated:—

ѣ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes *o*; unaccented disappears.

ь, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes *e* or *ë*; unaccented disappears, or is retained in spelling to soften the consonant.

---

\* Not to be confused with цѣпъ flail.

e.g. лóбъ (formerly лѣбъ') forehead, gen. лба́; ротъ (formerly рѣтъ') mouth, gen. рта́; левъ (formerly лѣвъ') lion, gen. льва́\*; сотъ, gen. of сто (for съто), one hundred; лёдъ ice (льда́'), gen. льда́.\*

*Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either ъ or ь), the accent had to be thrown back on to the stem.*

*In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained; hence the rules are much simpler.*

Similar instances are: пѣсъ dog, genitive пса́; мгнѣтъ, but мгновѣние, both meaning moment, the latter should have been spelt мгновѣние; мгла́ mist, for мъгла́; воз-, verbal prefix meaning "up," but взлѣсть to climb up, to grow up (for възлѣсть); сонъ sleep, сна́; лёнъ linen, льна́, etc.

As a contrast: Russian, мѣдъ, мѣда mead (the drink), Old Russian, медъ, мѣда; i.e. the original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point. All derivatives in ѣць (formerly ѣць) were once oxytone, i.e. accenting the termination ь'; hence, they "throw the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude the é of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a strengthening of the original ь (отъць).

---

\* The ь is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of *отецъ* is *отца́*; so, too—

купе́ць	merchant	купца́
вѣне́ць	crowн	вѣнца́

*But*, where the *-ецъ* is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. *Нѣмецъ* German (for *Нѣмьць*), *Нѣмца*, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in *ъ* or *ь*, *о* and *е* must be restored.

e.g. яйцо́	egg	яи́ць *
зло́	evil	золь
кольцо́	ring	коле́ць
письмо́	letter	пи́семъ
окно́	window	о́конъ
стекло́	pane of glass	сте́комъ
крѣсло	armchair	крѣселъ
овца́	sheep	ове́ць
судьба́	fate	суде́бъ
ру́чка	little hand	ру́чекъ
копѣйка	copeck	копѣекъ

*And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѣ replaces the symbol ь, but has the same value.*

e.g. ше́я neck, diminutive ше́йка, ше́екъ, i.e. *šeika*, *šeik*; солове́й nightingale, соловьи́, соловье́въ; мураве́й ant, муравьи́, муравье́въ.

In these last two instances *ѣ* represents an original *ь'й*, which in Russian became *ѣй*. The original inflection would have been *соловь'й*, *соловь'я*.

II. *Insertion of o and e for euphony.* Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

\* Irregular for *яи́ць*.



the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in ѣ and ѥ.

Some instances have already been given; viz. стеклѡ, креслѡ, письмѡ.

Others are:—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
мáрка	postage-stamp	мáрокъ
и́глá	needle	и́голъ, и́глъ
и́грá	game	и́горъ, и́гръ
рѡзга	cane	рѡзогъ
сестрá	sister	сестѣръ or сѣстръ
пѣ́сня	song	пѣ́сень
бáрышня	young lady	бáрышень
сѡ́тня	a body of one hundred	сѡ́тень
кúхня	kitchen	кúхонъ or кúхонь
земл́я	earth	земѣль
ребрѡ́	rib	рёберъ
ведрѡ́	ewer	вѣдеръ

In the nominatives:—

		<i>Gen.</i>
орѣ́ль (pronounce aryól)	eagle	орлá
огѡ́нь	fire	огни́
вѣ́теръ	wind	вѣ́тра
вѣ́хоръ	whirlwind	вѣ́хря
наѣ́мъ	hire	наймá
боѣ́ць	warrior	бойцá
зáяць	hare	зáйца

Observe the vowel o or e is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft,

Thus, too, тьмá darkness, тёмный dark, тщáтельно (for тыщáтельно) in vain, тощíй lean, and compare Russian дочь, дóчери, daughter, with the Church Slavonic дщѣри (for дъщѣри), cf. θυγατέρες.\*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g. мертвѣць	corpse	мертвеца́
близне́ць	twin	близнеца́

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. шрифѣть	type (from German)	[v. § 11 (δ).]
министръ	minister (from French)	

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination -ство.

e.g. об́ществъ	from общество	company
министѣрствъ	from министрѣство	ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. жѣртѣ	sacrifice	жертѣ
------------	-----------	-------

(4) In such words as рубль (masculine) rouble, корабль ship (masculine like конь), the л can be mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before р.

e.g. мудръ	wise,	быстръ	swift.	[v. § 36 (4).]
------------	-------	--------	--------	----------------

---

\* Whence пáдчерница, § 97.

IV. In the feminine in **и** of the third declension observe—

цѣрковь	church	цѣркви, цѣрковью
любѡвь	love	любви́, любѡвью
вошь	louse	вши, вѡшью
ложь	lie	лжи, лѡжью
рожь	rye	ржи, рѡжью

But when **Любѡвь** is a girl's name it retains in "o" throughout; thus, **Любѡви, Любѡвью.**

## THE ADJECTIVE.

### § 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, "the village pump"; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, "the Civil Service Examination," even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. "the Women's Red Cross Slavery Abolition League"; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, "this 'ere bloke." In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache  
 правительственные указы government decrees  
 ба́ранья шерсть sheep's wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l'intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.

(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. стеклѣнная бутылка a glass bottle, une bouteille de ver; St. Elias' day Пльннъ день; Igor's Army Ёгоревъ полкъ; the local custom тамошнїй или здѣшнїй обычай (from тамъ there, здѣсь here); a reindeer's horns олѣннн рогá.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. Петрѡвъ день St. Peter's day; Царїцнно село the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. Бѡжїй храмъ God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. дѡбрый good, художественный artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) In the plural adjective, except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter), there is no distinction of gender.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я Пванѡвъ	I am Ivanѡv
онъ столѣръ	he is a carpenter
онї мнѣ знакомы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-

tive form. (Certain predicative relations are expressed by a dative or instrumental, v. § 69, V. and VI.).

This apparent anomaly requires explanation. In older Russian, as in the Teutonic languages, there were two forms of adjectival declension, the determinative and the simple.

The simple form, as in most European languages, was inflected almost the same as the noun, an adjective being in a sense only a fuller form of noun capable of all three genders. Thus *Rōmānus* in Latin is exactly like *equus*, horse, *Rōmāna* like *mensa*, and *Rōmānum* like *bellum*; so, too, *ingens* has the same forms as *gens*, and so on. Similarly, in French the adjective *occidental* follows the form of the noun *cheval*, and *occidentale* of any feminine noun. In Latin there exists little but a grammarian's distinction between *bonus*, *bona*, good, masculine and feminine, and *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter.

So, too, in Russian the simple adjective originally followed nominal declensions almost exactly.

But, there being no article, the Old Slav pronoun *и*, he (obsolete in Russian), was compounded with and postponed to the simple form to make the so-called *determinative* form [v. § 35].

Thus as in German we find *guter Mann*, but *der gute Mann*, in older Russian, too, two forms existed. In modern Russian the *determinative form* has swept the simple form out of existence, except (a) in the nominative when used predicatively, (β) in the possessives and *descriptives*, some of which follow the simple inflection, (γ) in rather high-flown archaistic style when the old simple forms are used.

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ, ь* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Peter the Great created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and Lomonósov (1711–1765) set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *но́вый* new, *ди́кий* wild, for *но́вой*, *ди́кой* (*но́вые* masc. pl., *но́выя* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городово́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насе́комое</i>	insect
<i>столо́вая</i>	dining-room
<i>ди́тская</i>	nursery

#### § 34. FORMATION OF SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) Simple adjectives, *only for reference*. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

## Dear

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дóрогъ	дóрого	дорогá	дорогí
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дóрого	дорогý	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дорогá		дорогí	дорогíхъ
Dat.	дорогý		дорогѣ	дорогíмъ
Instr.	дорогíмъ		дорогóю	дорогíми
Loc.	дорогóмъ		дорогѣ	дорогíхъ

## Good

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дóбръ	дóбро	дóбрá	дóбрý
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дóбро	дóбру	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дóбрá		дóбрý	дóбрýхъ
Dat.	дóбрý		дóбрѣ	дóбрýмъ
Instr.	дóбрýмъ		дóброю	дóбрýми
Loc.	дóбрóмъ		дóбрѣ	дóбрýхъ

(2) *Formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in -овъ, those from the second in -ынъ, -инъ.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: Петрóвъ Peter's, Царéвъ the Tsar's. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name; e.g. Алексéй, Алексéевъ; Алексáндръ, Алексáндровъ.

Adjectives in -и́нъ are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g. Саша	(Alexander)	Сашинъ
Никита*	Nikíta	Никитинъ
Илья́	Elias	Ильинъ
Трои́ца	Trinity	Троицынъ
ма́ма	mother	ма́минъ
Цари́ца	Tsarítsa	Царицынъ
дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́динъ

*Note.*—Nouns in -ца take -цынъ ; and мужъ husband, братъ brother, господь Lord, irregularly form му́жнинъ, бра́тнинъ, господень.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions :—

## Peter's.

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	Петро́въ	Петро́во	Петро́ва	Петро́вы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петро́во	Петро́ву	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петро́ва		Петро́вой	Петро́выхъ
Dat.	Петро́ву		Петро́вой	Петро́вымъ
Instr.	Петро́вымъ		Петро́вою	Петро́выми
Loc.	Петро́вомъ		Петро́вой	Петро́выхъ

## Lord's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	госпо́день	госпо́дне	госпо́дня	госпо́дни
Acc.	Like N. or G.	госпо́дне	госпо́дню	Like N. or G.
Gen.	госпо́дня		госпо́дней	госпо́днихъ
Dat.	госпо́дню		госпо́дней	госпо́днимъ
Instr.	госпо́днимъ		госпо́днею	госпо́дними
Loc.	госпо́днемъ		госпо́дней	госпо́днихъ

\* Νικήτης,



*Note* that very many family names end in -овъ and -инъ, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is -ѣ.

e.g. въ Петровомъ письмѣ in Peter's letter, but  
я говорѣлъ о Петровѣ I was speaking of  
Petróv.

(3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding -ій to the stem. The nominative singular is, masc. -ій, neut. -ье, fem. -ья; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in -ью.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

*Observe* that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. волкъ wolf, волчій, волчье, волчья  
Богъ god, Божій, Божье, Божья  
лиса fox, лисій, лисье, лисья  
дѣвица or дѣвица maiden, дѣвицїй, дѣвицье,  
дѣвицья  
пёсъ dog, пёсїй, пёсье, пёсья, i.e. пёсья звѣзда  
the dog-star

*Also* дѣрево wood, деревянный wooden  
кожа leather, кожаный of leather

This termination -я(н)ный is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.

## § 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ
Acc.	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ	ѡ
Gen.	ѡѡ	ѡѡ	ѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ
Dat.	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ
Instr.	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ
Loc.	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ	ѡѡѡѡѡ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. *моло́дь*, *молодо́й*, i.e. *молодѡѡ*, and so on,

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded *в*. [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Hard Soft*	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft
N. бы̆ й	о̆ ӗ	ӑ я̆	ы̆ ӗ	ы̆я̆	ы̆я̆
о̆й					
accented					
A. As N or G.	о̆ ӗ	ўю̆	N. or G.	Nom.	N. or G.
Masc. and Neut.			All genders.		
G. аго̆	яго̆	о̆й̆ ӗй̆	ы̆х̆	йх̆	
о̆го̆					
accented					
D. о̆мў	ӗмў	о̆й̆ ӗй̆	ы̆м̆	йм̆	
I. бы̆м̆	йм̆	о̆ю̆† ӗю̆	ы̆мй	ймй	
L. о̆м̆	ӗм̆	о̆й̆ ӗй̆	ы̆х̆	ӗх̆	

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for three unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be *-о̆й*, as *ъ* when sounded in Russian becomes *о*. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be *-о̆й̆*, only when the termination was accented; otherwise *-бы̆й*.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this *-бы̆й* had to be spelled *-йй*.

e.g. *побы̆й* new, *дѣкйй* wild

But in such cases *дѣкйй* and similar words are still sounded *d'ikəi*, as though spelt *дѣкой*; whereas *дѣкйӗ*, where the *i* is there of right, is pronounced *d'ikiyě*.

\* There are *no* soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).

(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -e. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the e and the я in -ья, -ье, -ья, -ые, -ия, -ие are sounded alike, viz. уѣ.  
e.g. дѳбрыя дѳбруйѣ, худья (худѳй bad) khud'yѣ

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -оро and not -аро.

e.g. храброро of the brave man (khrábrorə); but  
чужоро of the strange man (čuz'orə).

## TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Hard.</i>		Full form.		Short form.
	Masc.	-ый	мѳлый	мѳль gentle
	Neut.	-ое	мѳлое	мѳло
	Fem.	-ая	мѳлая	мѳлѳ
<i>Soft.</i>	Masc.	-ій	сѳвій	сѳвь blue
	Neut.	-ее	сѳнее	сѳне
	Fem.	-ья	сѳняя	сѳня

(2) *Examples of the determinative adjective.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бѳлый	бѳлое	бѳлая
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлое	бѳлую
Gen.	бѳлаго		бѳлой
Dat.	бѳлому		бѳлой
Instr.	бѳлымѳ		бѳлою
Loc.	бѳломѳ		бѳлой
<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	бѳлые	бѳлыя	бѳлыя
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлыя	N. or G.
Gen.	бѳлыхѳ		
Dat.	бѳлымѳ		
Instr.	бѳлыми		
Loc.	бѳлыхѳ		

бѳль, бѳлѳ, бѳло, бѳлы white.

	<i>Singular.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	прямóй	прямóе	прямáя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямóе	прямóю
Gen.	прямóю		прямóй
Dat.	прямóму		прямóй
Instr.	прямóмъ		прямóю
Loc.	прямóмъ		прямóй

	<i>Plural.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	прямóе	прямб́я	прямб́я
Acc.	N. or G.	прямб́я	N. or G.
Gen.	прямб́хъ		
Dat.	прямб́мъ		
Instr.	прямб́ми		
Loc.	прямб́хъ		

прямъ, прямá, прýмо, прýмы upright.

	<i>Singular.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	с́ннйй	с́ннее	с́нняя
Acc.	N. or G.	с́ннее	с́ннюю
Gen.	с́ннюю		с́нней
Dat.	с́ннему		с́нней
Instr.	с́ннимъ		с́ннею
Loc.	с́ннемъ		с́нней

	<i>Plural.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	с́нние	с́ннил	с́нняя
Acc.	N. or G.	с́нния	N. or G.
Gen.	с́ннихъ		
Dat.	с́ннимъ		
Instr.	с́нними		
Loc.	с́ннихъ		

снвъ, с́няя, с́не, с́ни blue

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáнiй	барáнье	барáнья
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнье	барáнью
Gen.	барáньио		барáньей
Dat.	барáньему		барáньей
Instr.	барáньимъ		барáнью
Loc.	барáньемъ		барáньей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáньи	барáньи	барáньи
Acc.	N. or G.	барáньи	N. or G.
Gen.	барáньихъ		
Dat.	барáньимъ		
Instr.	барáньими		
Loc.	барáньихъ		

барáнiй, барáнья, барáнье, барáньи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	велiкiй	велiкое	велiкая
Acc.	N. or G.	велiкое	велiкую
Gen.	велiкаю		велiкой
Dat.	велiкому		велiкой
Instr.	велiкимъ		велiкою
Loc.	велiкомъ		велiкой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	велiкiе	велiкiя	
Acc.	N. or G.	велiкiя	N. or G.
Gen.	велiкиихъ		
Dat.	велiкиимъ		
Instr.	велiкиими		
Loc.	велiкиихъ		

велiкъ, велiкiя, велiкó, велiкiй great

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большо́й	большо́е	больша́я
Acc.	N. or G.	большо́е	большу́ю
Gen.	большо́го		большо́й
Dat.	большо́му		большо́й
Instr.	больши́мъ		большо́ю
Loc.	большо́мъ		большо́й

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	больші́е	больші́я	
Acc.	N. or G.	больші́я	N. or G.
Gen.		больші́хъ	
Dat.		больши́мъ	
Instr.		больши́ми	
Loc.		больші́хъ	

Not used predicatively. большо́й big, large.  
Thus: горя́чій, горя́чь, -а́, -о́, -и́, hot.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣ́жій	свѣ́жее	свѣ́жая
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣ́жее	свѣ́жую
Gen.	свѣ́жаго*		свѣ́жей
Dat.	свѣ́жему		свѣ́жей
Instr.	свѣ́жимъ		свѣ́жею
Loc.	свѣ́жемъ		свѣ́жей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣ́жіе	свѣ́жія	
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣ́жія	N. or G.
Gen.		свѣ́жихъ	
Dat.		свѣ́жимъ	
Instr.		свѣ́жими	
Loc.		свѣ́жихъ	

свѣ́жъ, свѣ́жа́, свѣ́жо́, свѣ́жі́ fresh. Thus: хоро́шій, хоро́шъ, хоро́шо́, хоро́ша́, хоро́ші́ excellent.

\* Sounded svézivъ.

### § 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the "insertion" of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

- (a) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *а́нги́йскій* English, *фра́нцу́зскій* French, *ру́сскій* Russian, *горо́дско́й* municipal, etc.
- (β) *большо́й* big (physically): *вели́къ* is used, e.g. *Бо́гъ вели́къ* God is great; but *э́тотъ до́мъ большо́й* this house is big.
- (γ) Adjectives denoting materials in *-я(н)ный*, e.g. *дере́вянный* wooden, *сере́брянный* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *бара́ний* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *ра́дъ* glad, *горо́здъ* skilful.

e.g. *я́ о́чень ра́дъ* I am very glad, *о́на́ на́ всё́ горо́зда* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

Possessives in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

Possessives in *-инъ* are thus accented: *се́стринь*, *се́стрина*, *се́стрино*, *се́стрины*, as *predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.



In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. *мужественный* masculine, *мужественъ*, *мужественна*, *мужественно*

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) *новый* new, *новъ*, *новá*, *ново*, *новы*

Thus, too, *бодръ* awake, *быстръ* swift, *великъ* big, *гордъ* proud, *твёрдъ* hard, *тихъ* still, *толстъ* fat, *старъ* old, *цѣль* whole, *чистъ* clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too:—

*тёмный* dark, *тѣмень*, *темнá*, *темно́*, *темны́*  
*красный* red, *красень*, *краснá*, *красно*, *красны*  
*тѣплый* hot, *тѣпель*, *теплá*, *теплó*, *теплы́*  
*чёрный* black, *чѣрень*, *чернá*, *черно́*, *черны́*

(ii) *голый* naked, *голь*, *голá*, *голо́*, *голы*

Thus, too, *высокъ* lofty, *далёкъ* far, *тяжёлъ* heavy, *бѣлый* white, *широкъ* far.

e.g. *далёкий*, *далёкъ*, *далекá*, *далекó*, *далёки*

(iii) *вольный* free, *волѣнь*, *вольнá*, *вольно́*, *вольны́*

Thus, too, *лёгкий* light (in weight), *лёгокъ*, *легкá*, *легко́*, *легки́*; *сильный* powerful, *умный* sensible.

(iv) *сухой* dry, *сухá*, *су́хо*, *сухи́*

Thus, too, *босъ* barefooted, *глухъ* deaf, *гниль* foul, *дорогъ* dear, *живъ* alive, *молодъ* young, *нагъ* naked, *нѣмъ* dumb, *плохъ* poorly, *слѣпъ* blind, *хромъ* lame, etc.; *больной* sick, *болѣнь*, *больнá*, *болѣно́*, *больны́*; *честной* or *честный* honest, *чѣстенъ*, *честнá*, *чѣстно́*, *честны́*.

§ 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, the comparative and the superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. бѳлѳе радѳ, from радѳ glad; inflected, e.g. глѳбже deeper, from глѳбѳкѳй.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. бѳлѳе, бѳлѳѳшѳй whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding -ѳе, -ѳѳшѳй to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding -(ѳ)е, -(ѳ)ше to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

-ѳе, -ѳѳшѳй, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, -ѳе or -ѳе, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian ѳ had a value approximating to я, and therefore, just as к, г, х + я in modern Russian make ча, жа, ша, so, too, in the comparatives к, г, х + -ѳе, -ѳѳшѳй, make чайшѳй, жайшѳй, шайшѳй.

Similarly, ск or ст + -ѳѳшѳй or -е make -ще, -щайшѳй, e.g. чѳстый pure, чѳще, чѳщѳйшѳй; плѳскѳй flat, плѳщѳйшѳй.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, "beautiful," "content" in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высо́кій** high, **вы́ше**, **вы́сшій**; superlative **высоча́йшій**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are:—

(a) The prefixing of **наи-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наилу́чшій при́мѣръ.**

This is the best example.

**Э́то наиме́ньшая су́мма.**

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самыи**, “the very,” to the positive.

e.g. **Э́то са́мая интере́сная кни́га изъ все́хъ мно́ю прочи́танныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those I have read [by me read].

**Нашъ домъ са́мый краси́вый въ дере́внѣ.**

Our house is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всего́** or **всѣхъ**.

e.g. **Э́та кни́га интере́снѣе все́хъ, кото́рыя я прочи́талъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any I have read.

**Вашъ совѣ́тъ поле́знѣе все́хъ.**

Your advice is the best.

- (δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. *Обѣдъ былъ очень вкусенъ.*  
The dinner was very tasty.

- (ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—  
*въ высшей степенн* in the highest degree.

e.g. *Онъ въ высшей степенн великодушенъ.*  
He is most magnanimous.

§ 38. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣе* more, is used:—

(α) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.

(β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣе глубокии* deeper.

(γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.

e.g. *Рѣка Москвѣ болѣе широка, нежели глубока.*  
The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.

(δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.

e.g. *Никогда не видѣла своего мужа болѣе оскорбленнымъ.*

She had never seen her husband more affronted.

*У него болѣе живой умъ.*

He has a keener mind.

(ε) Adjectives ending in *-скии*, *-скои*,

II. Only four adjectives have a simple inflected superlative.

e.g. нѣзкій	low	пѣжайшій
высѣкій	high	высѣчайшій
глубѣкій	deep	глубѣчайшій
мáлый	small	мáлѣйшій
		(better наимѣньше)

III. Adjectives in -сый, -жій, -зый, -чій, and many in -кій, -гій, have no *declinable* comparative.

e.g. лысый	bald	лысѣе
свѣжій	fresh	свѣжѣе
горячій	warm	горячѣе

The reason probably is that where the regular form -ѣе, -ѣйшій is used, the combination of sibilants would be too heavy, e.g. лышáйшій, свѣжáйшій, горячáйшій, and the want is supplied in other ways; *v.* next subdivision.

IV. The indeclinable comparative with the prefix по- can be used in concord with a noun.

e.g. Я купѣлъ шляпу побѣльше.  
I have bought a larger hat.

When the object of comparison is stated, the prefix по- has a diminutive sense.

e.g. Пѣши побыстрѣе.  
Just write a little more quickly.

V. There are two methods of translating "than":—

- (1) The use of **чѣмъ**, or rarely **нѣжели**: when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. **Этотъ урокъ лѣгче, чѣмъ (нѣжели) мы думали.**  
This lesson is easier than we thought.

- (2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. **Юрiи умнѣе своего брата Кузьмы.**  
George is more sensible than his brother  
**Кузьма (or чѣмъ его братъ).**

### § 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

#### *Examples.*

I. The regular form of comparison is **-ѣе**, **-ѣйшiй**, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. **любѣзный** amiable, **любѣзнѣе**, **любѣзнѣйшiй**  
**-ѣе** is often abbreviated to **-ѣи**.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. **справедливый** just, **справедливѣе**, **справедливѣйшiй**

II. Another very common form is **-(ь)е**, **-(ь)ше**, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. **-ный**, **-нiй**, and the comparative termination is attached to the root,

With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -ше, of the declinable form -ьшій, is used alternatively with -ѣ.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained:—

e.g.	крѣпкій	strong	крѣпче	крѣпчайшій
	лѣгкій	light (in weight)	лѣгче	лѣгчайшій
	мѣлкій	small	мѣльче	мѣльчайшій
	бойкій	brisk	бойчѣе (a modern form)	
	лѳвкій	clever	лѳвчѣе	
	гѳръкій	bitter	гѳрше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative:—

e.g.	высѳкій	high	выше	высшій*	высочайшій
	глубѳкій	deep	глубже		глубочайшій
	низкій	low	ниже	низшій	нижайшій
	пѳздній*	late	пѳзже*		пѳзнейшій
	близкій	near	ближе		ближайшій
	узкій	narrow	уже		
	рѣдкій	rare	рѣже		рѣдчайшій
	сладкій	sweet	сладче†		сладчайшій
	крѳткий	gentle	[крѳче]‡		крѳтчайшій
	корѳткий	short	корѳче		кратчайшій
	тѳнкій	thin	тѳньше		тончайшій
	ширѳкій	broad	шире		ширѳчайшій
	далѳкій	far	дальше		дальнейшій

\* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from ть.

‡ More usually бѳльче крѳткий.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix :—

e.g. твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдѣйшій
богáтый	rich	{ богáче } { богатѣ }	богатѣйшій
худóй	bad, lean	{ хуже (bad) } { худѣ (lean) }	худшій худѣйшій
плóскій	flat	плóще	
тíхий	quiet	тíше	тишáйшій
стрóгий	stern	стрóже	строжáйшій
дорогóй	dear	дорóже	дражáйшій
молодóй	young	моло́же	младшій
ста́рый	old	ста́рше	ста́ршій
круто́й	steep	кру́че	крутѣйшій
дешёвы́й	cheap	дешёвле	
пустóй	{ desolate } { empty }	пúще пустѣ	пúщій пустѣйшій
чíстый	clean	чíще	чистѣйшій

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

дóлгий long, дóльше (irregular, due to analogy of бóльше)  
далёкий far, дáльше or дáльѣ, дальнѣйшій (from дáльный)  
ра́но (adverb) early, ра́ньше or ра́нѣ

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знамени́тый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знамени́тѣ, знамени́тѣйшій. So, too, сердíтый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).



III. The following adjectives have no positive:—

e.g. *лучше, лучший* better; *меньше* less; *меньше, меньший* smaller; *больше* more; *больше, больший* bigger.

*Observe* the distinction:—

<i>меньшой</i> junior	<i>большой</i> big
<i>меньший</i> smaller	<i>больший</i> bigger

*Хороший* and *добрый* are used as positives for *лучше*; but *добрее, добрейший* also exist; also *малый* as a positive for *меньше*; and *великий* and *большой* for *больше, больше*.

## THE PRONOUN.

### § 40 (1). PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns in Russian present very little difficulty.

*Observe* (1) in the pronouns the genitive in -го is written -ого, -его, and can be pronounced and accented *аво́, ево́*. The dative in -му can also be oxytone.

(2) Pronominal adjectives (such as *како́рый, тако́й*) are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives [v. § 35 (2)].

(3) It will be observed that pronouns, though they are hard stems, take a *soft* plural, e.g. *самъ* self, *са́ми*.

The reason of this is that in Old Russian the nominative plural was *и* and the accusative *ы*. In Russian the old feminine plural forms in *ы* have superseded the masculine; but the same survival of the old nominative is found in the old participles in -ль, now used as the past tense, e.g. *быль, были*.

## § 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

Interrogative	кто who?	что what?	кой* which?	чей whose?	какъ how?	гдѣ where?	куда whither?	откуда whence?	какой which?	когда when?	почему† why?	сколько how much?
Relative	кто	что	кой*	чей	какъ якъ*	гдѣ	куда	откуда	какой	когда	почему	сколько
Demonstrative (remote)	тотъ	то		его ея§ ихъ свой†	такъ	тамъ	туда	оттуда	такой таковой	тогда	потому	столько
Demonstrative (near)	этотъ	это			этакъ	здесь			этакій (эдакій)			
Demonstrative (remote)	оный	оно										
Demonstrative (near)	сей	сіе сѣ			сякъ*		сюда	отсюда				
Universals	каждый every весь all всякій everyone	всѣ			всѣ тамъ всюду	вездѣ повсюду every- where		овсюду	всякій every	всегда always		



## § 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó)	for persons	что (štó)	for things
Acc.	кого́ (kavó)	„ „	что	„ „
Gen.	кого́	„ „	чего́ (čivó)	„ „
Dat.	кому́	„ „	чему́	„ „
Instr.	ке́мъ	„ „	ке́мъ	„ „
Loc.	комъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „

ко́торый (which of several?) and ка́кой (of what sort?) are declined adjectivally.

## кой which?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	кой	ко́е	ка́я	ко́и
Acc.	N. or G.	ко́е	ко́ю	N. or G.
Gen.		ко́его*	ко́ей	ко́ихъ
Dat.		ко́ему	ко́ей	ко́имъ
Instr.		ко́имъ	ко́ею	ко́ими
Loc.		ко́емъ	ко́ей	ко́ихъ

## чей whose?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	чей	чье́	ча́я	чьи́
Acc.	N. or G.	чье́	чью́	N. or G.
Gen.		чье́го́ (čivó)	чье́й	чьи́хъ
Dat.		чье́му́	чье́й	чьи́мъ
Instr.		чьи́мъ	чье́ю	чьи́ми
Loc.		чье́мъ	чье́й	чьи́хъ

\* Sounded kóyivə,

*Remarks.*—(1) кой is practically disused except in poetry, and a few proverbs.

(2) сколько is the only other declinable interrogative form.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	ско́лько
Gen. Loc.	ско́лькѣхъ
Dat.	ско́лькѣмъ
Instr.	ско́лькѣми

столько is similarly declined.

*Observe.*—In the nominative and accusative сколько is a noun governing the genitive plural; in other cases an adjective.

e.g. Ско́лько книгъ вы нашлі́?

How many books have you found?

Я самъ не зна́ю, ско́лькѣми страна́ми я вла́дѣю.

I do not myself know of how many countries

I am the master.

## II. *Relatives.*

These forms are now identical with the interrogatives. But, except in proverbs and poetry, кто and что are disused, кото́рый replacing them as relatives.

кто and что are scarcely ever used in strict apposition.

e.g. Я встрѣтилъ Ива́на, кото́рому я о́бщала́ свою ло́шадь.

I met John to whom I had promised my horse.

But they are commonly employed in distributive phrases *where the relative precedes*.

e.g. Кто бы ни появлялся у окна, въ тогѳ немедленно стрѳили.

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни сдѳили, вы ѳтимъ горю не помѳжете.  
Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

### III. *Demonstratives.*

тогѳ that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	тогѳ	то	та	тѳ
Acc.	N. or G.	то	ту	N. or G.
Gen.	тогѳ*		той	тѳхъ
Dat.	тому		той	тѳмъ
Instr.	тѳмъ		тою	тѳми
Loc.	томъ		той	тѳхъ

ѳтогѳ this

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	ѳтогѳ	ѳто	ѳта	ѳти
Acc.	N. or G.	ѳто	ѳту	N. or G.
Gen.	ѳтого		ѳтой	ѳтихъ
Dat.	ѳтому		ѳтой	ѳтимъ
Instr.	ѳтимъ		ѳтою	ѳtimi
Loc.	ѳтомъ		ѳтой	ѳтихъ

ѳный that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.				ѳные, ѳныя
Acc.	Like any hard adjective			ѳныхъ
Gen.	in -ый			ѳныхъ
Dat.				ѳнымъ
Instr.				ѳными
Loc.				ѳныхъ

\* Sounded tavѳ.

сей this				
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	сей	сіе сѣ	сіѧ	сіѧ
Acc.	N. or G.	сіе сѣ	сію	N. or G.
Gen.	сего*		сей	сѧхъ
Dat.	семѹ		сей	сѧмъ
Instr.	симъ		сѣю	сіѧми
Loc.	сѣмъ		сей	сѧхъ

*Consult* § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. *такіѧ, таковой* such as that; *этакіѧ* such as this, etc.

*Remarks.*—Practically only *тотъ* and *этотъ* are used in modern Russian. *оный* is found in legal documents, and *сей* in set phrases; e.g. *сегодня* (*śivód'nya*) to-day, *сейчасъ* in a minute, *до сѧхъ поръ* up to the present, *сію минутѹ* this very minute.

#### IV. *Universal Pronouns.*

*всіѧкій* every, everyone, and *каждый* each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

*весь*, all, drops the vowel "e" [v. § 32, I.]

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	весь	всѣ	вся	всѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	всѣ	всю	N. or G.
Gen.	всего†		всей	всѣхъ
Dat.	всемѹ		всей	всѣмъ
Instr.	всѣмъ		всѣю	всѣѧми
Loc.	всѣмъ		всей	всѣхъ

\* Sounded *śivó*.

† Sounded *śivó*.

V. *Personal Pronouns and Possessives.**Singular.*

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.			Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	онó	она́	—
Acc.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́*		еѐ	себя́
Gen.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́		ея́ †	себя́
Dat.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́		ей	себѣ́
Instr.	мно́ю	тобо́ю	имъ		ѣю	собо́ю
	мно́й	тобо́й				собо́й
Loc.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ѣмъ		ей	себѣ́

*Plural.*

Nom.	мы	вы	они́	они́	они́ ‡	As singular.
A.G.L.	насъ	васъ		ихъ		
Dat.	намъ	вамъ		имъ		
Instr.	на́ми	ва́ми		и́ми		

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ́, *sibi* себѣ́.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives мой, твой, свой are declined like кой [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. моё, моѣ́, моѣ́й, моѣ́ю, моего́, моему́, моѣ́мъ, моѣ́мъ, моѣ́, моѣ́хъ, моѣ́мъ, моѣ́ми, моѣ́хъ.

нашъ our, and вашъ your, are declined alike, viz. :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	нашъ	на́ше	на́ша	на́ши
Acc.	N. or G.	на́ше	на́шу	N. or G.
Gen.		на́шего	на́шей	на́шихъ
Dat.		на́шему	на́шей	на́шимъ
Instr.		на́шимъ	на́шею	на́шими
Loc.		на́шемъ	на́шей	на́шихъ

\* Sounded yivó, yim, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. еѐ,  
‡ Sounded like они́,



*Remarks.*—(1) свой and себя always refer back to the subject of *their own sentence*, whether subordinate or principal, and refer to *all persons*.

e.g. Вы прóдали свою́ честь.

You have sold your honour.

The 3rd person pronouns when they are *not reflexive* are the genitives, егó, ея́, ихъ.

e.g. Мнѣ сказа́ли, что купе́ць уже́ прóдалъ егó това́ры.

They told me that the merchant has already sold his (somebody else's) goods.

In vulgar speech ихній is used for ихъ their.

When себя́ is attached to reflexive or passive verbs it takes the shortened form ся (*sounded* ca) after consonants, съ after vowels.

In older Russian all the pronouns had abbreviated enclitic forms [cf. French "moi," "me," etc.], viz. мя, тя, ся for меня, тебя, себя; ми, ти, си for мнѣ, тебѣ, себѣ. Of these forms only ся survives.

e.g. Въ отча́яніи плѣ́нникъ заколо́лъ себя́.

In despair the prisoner stabbed himself (reflexive).

Стыжусь́ э́того.

I am ashamed of this (a reflexive verb).

Ча́шка разби́лась.

The cup was smashed (a passive).

(2) When егó, ему́, ея́, еѣ, ихъ, имъ, ими, ей; ею, ёмъ are governed by *any* preposition, the letter н is prefixed to them.

e.g. къ нему́ to him (sound knemú)

въ ней in her (sound vńeí)

прóтивъ нихъ against them

у него́ with him [*chez lui*]

съ нѣми with them (sound sními)  
 близъ нея near her  
 на него against him (sound nanívó)  
 на нёмъ. on him (sound nanyóm)

*But* егó рáди for his sake (the preposition follows)  
 о́коло егó дóма near his house  
 подъ ихъ влáстью under their power, etc.

In these two instances егó and ихъ are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -ой, -ей.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are often omitted.

e.g. клянёмъ	we curse
слы́шу	I hear
понима́ешь?	do you [familiar pronoun] understand?

## VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

- (1) Prefixing нѣ́- accented. [v. p. 78.]
- (2) Adding -ли́бо (i.e. любо, as you please).
- (3) Adding ни́бу́дь (i.e. as it may be, from бу́дь, imperative of бы́ть). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]
- (4) Prefixing кое- with a *distributive* sense.
 

e.g. гдѣ́-ни́бу́дь	somewhere or other
ко́е-гдѣ́	here and there
ко́е-кѣ́о	various people (say)
<i>But</i> нѣ́которы́е	some people (say)

(5) Adding -то. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. **человѣкъ-то** that kind of man  
**какой-то** some sort or other  
**кто-то** somebody you know who

### VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing **ни-** *nor*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. **ни на когó** against no one  
**ни на какомъ мѣстѣ** not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. **Никогдá нé было войны, похóжей на тепéрешнюю.**  
 Never was there a war like the present war.  
**Я ни гдѣ не видѣлъ вáшего брата.**  
 I did not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

### VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing -же to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. **этотъ-же** the same as this  
**такой-же** the same sort as that

(2) The words **самъ** and **самый**.

**Самъ** means "self"; as in English, I myself **я самъ**.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	самó	самá	сáми
Acc.	самогó	самó	самоë	N. or G.
Gen.		самогó*	самóй	самíхъ
Dat.		самомý	самóй	самíмъ
Instr.		самíмъ	самóю	самíми
Loc.		самóмъ	самóй	самíхъ

As regards the soft plural сáми, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Сáмый means "self" or "self-same," and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

#### IX. The Pronouns of Difference.

The meanings of другóй and ино́й should be marked. другóй is "other," Latin *alius*, Greek ἄλλος, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. ино́й is "some other," Latin *alteri*, Greek ἕτεροι, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые э́того не мо́гутъ повѣ́тъ.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

И́ные мо́гутъ подúмать, что онъ сошѣлъ съ умá.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Однѣ́, однѣ́ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of оди́нъ one, means "some"; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, и́ногда sometimes, from time to time (definite)

и́ногда once upon a time

когда́-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прóчие, прóчия means "the rest," "the remainder."

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

впрóчемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).

\* Sounded saməvö.

# § 42 (1). A TABLE OF RUSSIAN VERBS.

## Conjugations.

### I.

Infm. in -ть, -ать, -ять  
Pres. -у, -ешь ... -уть

utlural roots, in infm. in -чь  
Nasal roots, in infm. in -ять  
Sibilant roots, in infm. in -сть, -сш  
Liquid roots, in infm. in -сть, -сш  
Dental roots, in infm. in -сть, -сш  
Roots in -в  
Consonantal roots with suffixal "а" in infm. and past tense

### II.

Infm. in -нуть  
Pres. -ну, -нешь ... -нуть

"Instantaneous" verbs transitive, in past tense  
Inchoative verbs intransitive, stem in past tense  
past part. pass. in -т

### III.

Infm. in -ть, -ать, -ять  
Pres. -ю, -ешь, -есть ... -уть

### DERIVATIVE

No suffix before termination  
from nouns in -аль, -ять  
Inceptives in -ять  
Derivatives in -овать, -провать in -ать, -ять  
Iteratives in -ывать, -ивать

Vocalic roots  
Suffixal infm. in -ать, -ять

Originals in -овать, -свать

Verbal noun and past part. pass. in -т

### IV.

Infm. in -тъ, -нть  
Pres. -ю, -ишь, -ишь ... -ять

### ANOMALOUS

Mixed conjugation

Obsolete

Same root Different roots  
Redupli- cative et  
-ам  
-ать

ORIGINALS

DERIVATIVES

in -нть, causatives and others

in -ать, -тъ, -нть, -ять

## THE VERB.

## § 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

*The Parts of the Russian Verb.*

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are:—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense. In perfective verbs it is used as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in -лъ, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”\* active in -я, and present participle in -ущій or -ящій.
- (6) A past participle active in -вшій, and a past gerundive\* in -въ or -вши.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian *ши* was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

(7) A present participle passive in -емый, and

(8) A past participle passive in -тый or -ный.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

(9) A verbal noun in -нiе, and -тiе.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

---

\* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

*The Deficiencies and the "Aspects" (вѣды).*

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past "tense" to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with бѣду, one of the forms of бѣть to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, "I do," "I am doing," "I was doing," "I did," "I used to do," "I *do* do," "I have done," all define the nature of the act; e.g. "I am doing" is the continuous conjugation; "I used to do" the habitual; "I have done" marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect, aorist, perfect*, etc. In modern Russian "aspects" replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvire* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

*ēdō* to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed "aspects." Compare, too, the French *vivre, vivotter*.

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms *νοσεῖν* to be ill, *ἀποθνήσκω* to die, correspond to the imperfective *болѣть* or *хворáть* and *умирáть*; the aorist forms *ἐνόσησα, νοσήσαι, ἀποθανεῖν*, to the perfective *заболѣть, захворáть, умерéть*, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. *онъ заболѣлъ, захворáлъ, умерéтъ, ἐνόσησε*; but *онъ болѣлъ, he was ill some time, ἐνόσει*; *онъ умирáлъ, he lay a-dying, ἀπέθνησκε*.

And just as *νοσήσω*, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so *захворáю, умрý* signify I shall fall ill, shall die. E.g. *умрётъ отъ чахóткн* he will die of consumption.

#### *How the Parts are Formed.*

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

#### *Verbs Original and Derivative.*

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English "to fall," "to write," are original; "to book," "to tabulate" derivative (from the noun "book," and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dīcere* to say, *iūdicāre*, from *iūdex*, a judge.



Derivatives, verbs which mostly represent complex ideas, greatly outnumber the primary verbs; in frequency of use they are less, as the simpler relations have to be constantly re-stated.

In Latin derivative verbs have a vocalic stem, e.g. *iūdicā-re*, *monē-re*, *audire*.\* So, too, in Russian дѹма thought, дѹмать to think; зелёный green, зеленѣть to become green; живъ alive, жить to live (an original verb), оживѣть to revive, from живой alive.

The derivative verbs being the more numerous, and the newest and easiest formations, tend to set the model, and become the "regular" verbs.

The primary verbs, being the most employed and the most worn down in daily use, also being drawn from more ancient sources, conserve obsolete forms, and are sometimes called "irregular"—arbitrarily and inaccurately. Actually Russian has next to no verbs that can be really termed anomalous.

Further, many "original" or "primary" verbs have consonantal stems or roots, e.g. Latin *reg-ere* to rule, *dīc-ere* to say; i.e. one ending in a consonant.

#### § 43. THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The Russian infinitive ends in -ть and is preceded by the root in original verbs, by the stem in derivative verbs.

In some verbs -ті́ accented survived, e.g. нес-ті́ to carry.

---

\* Russian verbs in -ѣть, -ѣю, -ать, -аю, -ить, -ю may be compared with the Latin -eo, -[a]o, -io, whilst the Russian first conjugation consists of root-verbs, like the Latin third.

In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -ть coalesce into -чь, e.g. печь to bake, for пек-ть; жечь to burn, for жег-ть.

In some dental roots, the dental and -ть coalesce into -сть, e.g. вести to lead, for вед-ть; плести to pleat, for плет-ть.

In "original" vocalic stems -ть follows the root, e.g. зна-ть to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. жить to live, for жив-ть.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. желá-ть to wish.

#### § 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -ть termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

(1) By adding -нiе a verbal noun is formed; e.g. колебá-ть to rock, колебáнiе; вѣя-ть to blow, вѣянiе.

(2) By adding -лѣ the past tense is formed; e.g. я колебáлѣ I rocked.\*

(3) By adding -я to the present stem the present "gerundive" дѣла-ть; e.g. дѣлая doing.

---

\* In consonantal stems this -лѣ is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

E.g. тереть (root тѣр) to rule, past tense тѣрѣ, тѣрѣа (fem.), etc.

лечь (root лѣг) to lie down, past tense лѣгѣ, лѣгѣа (fem.), etc.

-речь (root рѣк) to speak, past tense рѣкѣ, рѣкѣа (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish rzekł, and Čech řekl.

- (4) By adding -ущій, -ющій to the present stem the present participle; e.g. имѣющій possessing (имѣ-ть);\* -ящій is added with *derivative* verbs in -ить: пис-а-ть, пишущій.
- (5) By adding -въ or -вши the past gerundive; e.g. пис-а-ть to write, писавъ, писавши,† and by adding -вшій the past participle active; e.g. веселі-ть to enliven, веселі-вшій.
- (6) By adding -емый or -имый the present participle passive; e.g. зна-ть to know, знаемый; ставитъ to place, ставимый.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present ставимъ, знаемъ.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in т or н. т is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. двинуть to move, двинутый, послать to send, посланный sent.

*This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.*

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

\* In older Russian the terminations were -ущи, -ящи gerundive, -ущій, -ящій participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. могучій powerful (мочь), горячій (горѣть) hot, сидячій sedentary. Будущи is still used as the gerundive present of быть; будущій, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is -шиі, e.g. нести to carry, нести, несши.

§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON  
SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 2nd person singular present by substituting й, ь or и for ешь or ишь, the accent being that of the 1st person singular.

The addition of -те makes this imperative form plural.

The same -те added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. б́уду I shall be, б́удь, б́удьте, б́удем-те  
веселю́ I enliven, весели́, веселите́

There are a very few exceptions to this accentual rule, viz. бить to beat [v. § 52 (2) β], дать to give [v. § 57, III.], сто́ять to stand [v. § 52 (3)], бо́ится to fear [v. § 52 (3)], сме́яться to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], крыть\* to cover [v. § 52 (2) ε].

e.g. внемлешь thou perceivest, внемли́  
бьешь thou beatest, бей  
боишься thou fearest, бой-ся  
моешься thou wasthest, мой-ся

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

---

\* The exception in verbs in -ыть is apparent only: if the ы be taken as a contraction of -оé or у, i.e. as equivalent to -моеть.

accent. Only a few derivatives and most of the original verbs have a variable accent.

IV. The only constant variations in the accentuation of the verb are in the present tense and the past participle passive, and forms derived from the present stem.

V. Every verb which has an infinitive of two syllables or more, and is not accented on the ultimate, has a fixed accent.

VI. In dissyllabic verbs accented on the ultimate in the infinitive, the accent *may* vary on certain inflections.

VII. A verb with a variable accent accents the infinitive and 1st person singular present alike, the 2nd and 3rd persons singular, the 1st and 2nd plural, on the penultimate; the 3rd person plural either on the ultimate or penultimate, generally the latter.

VIII. As a rule, the past participle passive has the secondary accent when the accent is variable.\*

IX. Russian verbs are divided into four conjugations, which differ very little.

EXAMPLES OF VERBS WITH AND WITHOUT VARIABLE ACCENTS.

вѣ́дѣть to see (invariable) (rule V.).

вѣ́жу	вѣ́димъ
вѣ́дишь	вѣ́дите
вѣ́дитъ	вѣ́дятъ

пи́сать to write (variable) (rule VI.).

пи́шѹ	пи́шемъ
пи́шешь	пи́шете
пи́шетъ	пи́шутъ

---

\* E.g. воспитать educate, воспитанный; писать write, писать, писанный.

ска́зать to tell (variable) (rule VI.).

скаж́у	ска́жемъ
ска́жешь	ска́жете
ска́жетеъ	ска́жутъ

песѣ́ти to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

песу́	песѣ́мъ
песѣ́шь	песѣ́те [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
песѣ́тъ	песу́тъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	желá-ть to wish	вѣри-ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	желáнiе	[вѣренiе] *
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	желáя	вѣря
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	желáющiй	вѣрящiй
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	желáвъ, желáвши	вѣривъ, вѣривши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	желáвший	вѣривший
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	желáемый	вѣримый †
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	желáнный	-вѣренный
<i>Present :</i>	я желáю	вѣрю
	ты желáешь	вѣришь
	онъ, она́, оно́ желáетъ	вѣритъ
	мы желáемъ	вѣримъ
	вы желáете	вѣрите
	они́, онѣ́ желáютъ	вѣрятъ
<i>Past :</i>	я, ты желáлъ, желáла	вѣрилъ, вѣрила
	онъ, она́, оно́ { желáлъ, желáла, желáю	
	{ вѣрилъ, вѣрила, вѣрило	
	мы, вы, они́, онѣ́ желáли, вѣрили	

\* Replaced by вѣрованiе, from вѣровать.

† Rare.

<i>Future</i> :	бѹду	} желáть	бѹдемь	} желáть	
	бѹдешь		бѹдете		} вѣрѣть
	бѹдеть		бѹдуть		

<i>Imperative</i> :	2nd pers. sing.	желáй	вѣрь
	2nd pers. pl.	желáйте	вѣрьте

*Unless specially mentioned, all the parts of the Russian verb are simply and regularly formed as in these two paradigms.*

#### § 48. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

##### *Some Phonetic Rules.*

Before entering on this section, reperuse § 5, § 6, § 8, § 9.

*Remember.*—Words in -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-, though now dissyllables, represent monosyllabic roots in -ре-, -ра-, -ле-, -ла-.

*Remember*—

г + е makes же г + и makes жи г + ю makes жу

And similarly with к and х (changing to ч and ш).

*Remember*—

т + ю makes in Russian чу, in Church Slavonic чу.

д + ю makes in Russian жу, in Church Slavonic жду.

т + я can make in Russian ча, and in Church Slavonic  
ща or remain.

т + е or и can make че, чи or remain.

д + е or и can make же, жи or remain.

д + я can make жа or remain.

When the dental remains, it is due to the influence of the written language.

*Remember*—к, г + -ть are changed to -чь; but т or д + тѹ to -стѹ, and the ending -стѹ is extended to other roots by false analogy.

*Remember*—з + я becomes жа or remains.  
 с + я becomes ша or remains.  
 с + ю becomes шу  
 з + ю becomes жу  
 ст + ю becomes шу

*Remember.*—The euphonic insertion of л after labial roots before ю, and -енный.

Before other soft vowels с, з and ст as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

#### § 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in -у, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -утъ, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots.*—Infinitive in -чь; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root пек)	жечь to burn (root жг)
<i>Past part. act. :</i> пёкшій	жѣгшій
<i>Gerundive :</i> пѣкши	жѣгши
<i>Present part. act. :</i> пекúщій	жгúщій
<i>Past part. pass. :</i> печѣнный	жжѣнный
<i>Present :</i> пекú    печёмъ	жгу    жжёмъ
печѣшь    печёте	жжѣшь    жжёте
печётъ    пекúтъ	жжётъ    жгутъ
<i>Past :</i> пѣкъ, пеклá, пеклó, пеклí ;	жѣгъ, жглá, жглó, жглí
<i>Imperative :</i> пекí ; жги	



Similarly:—

-речь to speak (root рек)—this verb is obsolete.  
 лечь to lie down (irregular present stem лѣгу,  
 лѣжешь, лѣгутъ; but past лёгъ, легла́, легло́,  
 легли́); imperative лягъ  
 мочь to be able (root мог)

*Note.*—мочь makes могу́, можешь, можетъ, можемъ,  
 можете, могутъ; imperative моги́, etc.

Similarly:—

вечь to draw (root влек)  
 сѣчь to cut (root сѣк)  
 беречь to shelter (root берег, present берёгу́,  
 бережешь . . . берёгутъ, past берёгъ,  
 берёгла́, берёгло́, берёгли́)  
 стеречь to guard (root стер, like беречь)  
 стричься to have the hair cut (root стриг)\*  
 течь to flow (root тек)  
 запрячь to yoke (root прѣг: note the past  
 запрягъ, sounded прыѡк, прыгла́, -ло́, -ли́)  
 волочь to drag (root волок)

*Practically all of these have a fixed accent on the termination.*

II. *Nasal Roots.*—Infinitive in -ять (-ать after ж, ч, etc.).

*Remember.*—The Russian я represents the Old Slav е (French *aim, in, in faim, fin*); and the nasal lost in some forms is restored in fuller inflections; cf. время́, времени́. [v. § 2 (2).]

e.g. нача́ть to begin (root чьн); cf. imperfective  
 начина́ть

---

\* Note past participle passive остри́женный.

The present gerundive and participle *начая* and *начающій* do not exist; for the forms cf. *жмущій* and *жнущій*; only the past active participles *начавъ*, *начавшій*.

But note *past part. pass.* *начатый*.

*Present* (with future meaning):—

начу́	начпѣмъ
начвѣшь	начпѣте
начнѣтъ	начнѣтъ

*Past*: *началъ*, *начала́*, *начало*, *начали*

*Imperative*: *начи́*

*Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -ль and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.*

Such are:—*жать* (*жму*) to press (root *жмъ*); *жать* (*жну*) to reap (root *жнъ*), *чать* (root *чнъ*); only used in compounds, e.g. *начинать* begin, *сочинять* compose; *пять* (*пну*, root *пнъ*), mostly used in compounds, e.g. *распять* to crucify.

*Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -тіе (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).*

e.g. *распѣтіе* the crucifixion

*повѣтіе* the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. *-ять* (root *ем*, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], *н* is prefixed to the root.

e.g. наня́ть to hire, припа́ть асерт, пона́ть to understand, заня́ть to occupy (oneself) or to lend, взять to take up, сня́ть to take off; all in the imperfective, напима́ть, припима́ть, etc.; all having a past participle passive, пана́ть, за́нять, etc.

The present restores the original root -ем, -ьм, or -йм.

e.g. найму́, наймёшь, etc., пойму́, возьму́, займу́, etc.

There also exists a present form in -ёмлю, e.g. виёмлю (perceive), виёмлешь, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented виёмли́.

### III. *Sibilant Roots.*

These are:—

нести́ to carry (root нес)

везти́ to carry (in a vehicle) (root вез)

грызть to gnaw (root грыз)

лѣзть to climb (root лѣз)

ползти́ to creep (root полз)

паст́и to pasture (transitive) (root паст)

Example:—

*Infinitive*: везти́

*Gerundive present*: вези́

*Participle present*: везу́щій

*Gerundive past*: вёзши

*Past participle passive*: везённый

*Verbal*, derived from вози́ть: -вожéние

*Present*: везу́, везёшь, etc.

*Past*: вёзъ, везла́, -ло́, -ли́

*Imperative*: вези́

*Notice*.—лѣзть has a present лѣзу, лѣзешь, etc., лѣзуть; imperative лѣзь.

IV. *Roots in Liquids* : -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-.

- (1) e.g. терѣть to rub (root тѣр, imperf. тѣра́тъ)  
 -мерѣть to die (root мѣр, imperf. -мира́тъ)  
 перѣть to prop (root пѣр, imperf. -пира́тъ)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : терѣть

*Verbal* : трѣніе\*

*Past part. pass.* : тѣртъ, like the roots in nasals

*Present gerundive act.* : трѣщи

*Present part. act.* : трѣщій

*Past part. act.* : тѣртый

*Present* : тѣру, трѣшь, трѣтъ, трѣмъ, трѣте, тѣрутъ

*Past* : тѣръ, тѣрла, -ло, -ли

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with *р*, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. ѹмеръ, умерла́, ѹмерло, ѹмерли (умерѣть)

So, too, подперъ (but -пѣръ) to prop.

- (2) борóтъ to fight†                      полóтъ to weed  
 порóтъ to rend                              молóтъ to grind  
 колóтъ to chop

колóтъ to pierce.

*Present part. act.* : кóлющій

*Past part. act.* : колóвшій

*Verbal noun* : колóтьѣ

*Past part. pass.* : кóлотый

*Present part. pass.* : поне

*Present* (following the third conjugation) : колóю,  
 кóлешь, кóлетъ, кóлемъ, кóлете, кóлютъ

*Past* : колóлъ, колóла, колóло, колóли

\* трѣіе is disused.

† Used with -ся, omitted in example,

These five verbs differ slightly from the verbs in -ерѣть, -елѣть.

(a) The present as in the third conjugation.

(β) A uniformly variable accent. [v. § 46.]

(γ) A regular vocalic past tense with fixed accent.

(δ) молѡть is *irregular* in forming its present: мелю́, мелѣшь, мелѣть, мелѣемъ, мелѣете, мелѣютъ, as though from an infinitive мелѣть.

#### V. *Roots in Dentals.*

e.g. весті́ to lead (root вед)

гнесті́ to press (root гнет)

цвѣсті́ to bloom (root цвѣт), but v. § 9 (7) (3)

класть to lay (root клад)

красть to steal (root крад)

(крадú, крадепный)

пасть to fall (root пад)

прясть to spin (root пряд)

сѣсть to sit (сѣду, сѣдѣшь)

растí to grow (root раст: растú, etc.; past tense росъ)

-чѣсть to read (root чыт)

идті́ to go (root ыд)

and by false analogy—

скрѣсть to scrape (root скрѣб: скрѣбú, скрѣбѣшь—скрѣбъ)

грѣсть to row (root грѣб: грѣбú, грѣбѣшь, грѣбъ)

клясть to swear (root клян: клянú, клянѣшь—клянъ)

These verbs form the past in лъ added on to the vowel of the infinitive, the real root being disregarded.

e.g. вѣлъ, велá, велó, вели́

So гнѣлъ, цвѣ́лъ, клалъ

Exceptions, грести́ and скрести́: грёбъ, гребла́, гребли́; скрёбъ, скребла́, скребли́; and расти́ (root раст), расту́, растёшь, рос -ъ, -ла́, -ло́, -ли́.

-честь (to read) and идти́ (to go) follow slightly different rules.

*Present* : иду́ (in compounds йду, e.g. найду́ I shall find, etc.), идёшь, идётъ, идёмъ, идёте, иду́тъ

*Past* (from root шед) : шёлъ, шла́, шли́

*Participles and gerundives* : иди́, иду́щий, шедши́й

-честь (only used in compounds, root чьт)

*Present* : -чту, -чтёшь, -чтутъ

*Past* : -чёлъ, -чла́, -чли́

*Verbal noun* : чтéние

*Participles* : -чтённы́й

сѣсть has a present сяду́ accented uniformly like лечь, лягу́. красть accents the present краду́, крадёшь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

красть to steal

*Present gerundive active* : кради́

*Present participle active* : краду́щий

*Past participle active* : кра́дши́й

*Past participle passive* : кра́дешь, кра́дешны́й

*Present* : краду́, -ёшь, -ётъ, -ёмъ, -ёте, -у́тъ

*Imperative* : кради́

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

*Past* : кра́лъ, кра́ла, кра́ло, кра́ли

So, too, сѣ́лъ, сѣ́ла, сѣ́ло, сѣ́ли

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. лёгъ, леглѧ́, легло́, легли́

паль\* (пасть) and сѣль (сѣсть) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in -ать and -ѣть.

Forms such as вѣль, плѣль (вѣстѣ́, плѣстѣ́) throw the accent forward like лёгъ, росъ; so, too, княль (княстѣ́, княвѣ́), краль (крастѣ́).

*Except* in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense (or rather the participle in -л) never shifts the accent.

VI. *Roots in в.* These are three in number.

жить to live

плыть to swim

слыть to have a reputation of (Greek κλύειν)

e.g. онъ слывѣтъ мѣдрымъ he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

жить to live

*Verbal noun*: житіѣ and житьѣ

*Past participle passive*: -житыи

*Gerundive present active*: живѧ́

*Participle present active*: живѣщїи (but older form, used adjectivally, живѣчїи)

*Gerundive past active*: жѧ́вши, живѣ

*Participle past active*: жѧ́вшїи

*Present*: живѣ́, живѣшь . . . живѣ́тъ

*Past*: жилъ, жилѧ́, жи́ло, жи́ли

\* Cf. Polish *pađl*,





## § 50. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The first conjugation consists of consonantal roots attached directly to the terminations. This involves phonological difficulties, and slightly complicates the accentuation and appearance of the forms.

The second conjugation is composed of roots with a vocalic suffix, and thus greater apparent regularity is secured.

The marks of the second conjugation are: infinitive, -н<sup>у</sup>ть; present, -н<sup>у</sup>, -нешь, -пешь, -немъ, -нете, -путь, or, accented, -н<sup>у́</sup>, -нешь, -нѣть, -нѣмъ, -нѣте, -н<sup>у́</sup>тъ.

The present forms are therefore identical with those of the first conjugation, save for the prefixing of the н.

This conjugation falls under two main heads, which must be carefully distinguished.

I. Perfective verbs conserving the “н<sup>у</sup>” suffix throughout all the forms of verb, and mostly accented like the imperfective verb from which they are derived. These verbs [v. § 59, I. (2)] as perfectives have a peculiar meaning of instantaneity—of doing an action once and suddenly. The suffixal vowel of the imperfective verb is dropped, and sometimes the last consonant of the root as well, to avoid heavy combinations of the consonants.

e.g.	вертѣть	to turn	верн <sup>у́</sup> тъ
	стегать	to quilt	стегн <sup>у́</sup> тъ
	порхать	to flutter	порхн <sup>у́</sup> тъ
	махать	to wave	махн <sup>у́</sup> тъ
	двѣгать	to move	двѣн <sup>у́</sup> тъ

e.g. дѣргать	to pull	дѣрнуть
тѣбгать	to touch	тѣбнуть
тонѣть	to sink	тонуть* to drown
тѣгивать	to drag	тѣпуть* to pull
касѣться	to concern	коснуться
шептѣть	to whisper	шепнуть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. глядѣть	to look at	глануть
кидѣть	to throw	кинуть
чѣрпать	to lade	черпнуть
зѣть	to glare	-зѣпуть
кричѣть	to cry	крикнуть

*Note*, however, compounds in глануть have a *variable* accent.

e.g. заглянуть, загляпуть, заглѣпешь, etc.

## II. Verbs in -путь, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and ѣ, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

---

\* With variable accent тѣпешь, тѣпешь, тѣпутьи.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

- e.g. слѣ́пнуть to become blind  
 со́хнуть to become dry  
 ча́хнуть to die gradually, or wither  
 стѣ́пнуть to cool  
 гѣ́бнуть (гѣ́бать) to decay  
 тѣ́хнуть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in -нуль.

- e.g. ли́пнуть to adhere, ли́пну́ль; -снуть (mostly used in compounds, e.g. засну́ть, просну́ть) to sleep, -сну́ль (as the perfective of засыпа́ть, etc.)

The present runs -сну, -сиёшь . . . снутъ.\*

### III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive.	Imperf. and Intrans.
	кѣ́нуть to cast off	гѣ́бнуть to decay
<i>Infinitive :</i>	кѣ́нуть	гѣ́бнуть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	(кѣ́нудіе)	none
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	кѣ́нутый (и т not и)	none
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	none	гѣ́бнущій
<i>Present gerundive act. :</i>	none	гѣ́бнущи
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	кѣ́нувши	гѣ́бнувши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	кѣ́нувшій	гѣ́бнувшій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	none	none
<i>Present :</i>	кѣ́ну, кѣ́нешь, кѣ́нетъ, кѣ́немъ, кѣ́нете, кѣ́нутъ	гѣ́бну, гѣ́бнешь, гѣ́бнетъ, гѣ́бнемъ, гѣ́бнете, гѣ́бнутъ
<i>Past :</i>	кѣ́нулъ, кѣ́нула, кѣ́нуло, кѣ́нули	гѣ́бъ, гѣ́бла гѣ́бло, гѣ́бли
<i>Imperative :</i>	кѣ́нь	гѣ́би

\* Cf. the noun сонъ, сна.

## § 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Preliminary.*

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -еть, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣтъ; the derivative verbs in -ать and -яť, which is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -ать is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣтъ are precisely the same, e.g. зеленѣть to become green, the stem зеленѣ- being substituted for the stem желá-.

## § 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in* -омотъ, -оротъ.

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (2).

(2) *Vocalic roots*.—(a) Roots in а.

e.g. зна-ть to know

This is conjugated exactly like желать [v. § 47].

So, too, сия-ть to shine (сіяю).

(β) Roots in и.

e.g. бить to beat    лить to pour    шить to sew  
вить to wind    брить to shave    гнить to rot

All of these form the *past participle passive* in -тъ.

e.g. битъ, вить, лить, etc.

The *verbal nouns* are formed either in -нтіе or -еніе.

e.g. битѣ, біеніе, гніеніе, etc.

The present tense is formed:—

бью, бьѣшь, бьѣтъ, бьѣмъ, бьѣте, бьютъ

So, too, шью, гню, лью, вью, etc.

But брить, брѣю, брѣешь, брѣетъ, брѣемъ, брѣете, брѣютъ.

The other forms present no variance; e.g. бьющій, бившій, билъ (біла, біло, біли), бей (imperative). [v. § 45.]

(γ) Roots in у.

e.g. дуть to blow    обуть to put on [shoes]

These are quite regular, the root being ду, обуй.

e.g. дую, дуйѣшь . . . дуютъ, дуй  
дуйа, дующій, дувшій, дуйль

The verbal noun and past participle passive are in т, дутьѣ, обутьіе, дуть, обуть.

(δ) Roots in ѣ.

смѣть to dare\*    грѣть to warm  
успѣть to succeed

\* Not to be confused with смѣяться laugh. [v. § 52, I. (3).]

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in -ѣть, or like желаю [v. § 47], substituting the root in ѣ for желá-.

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel ѣ; e.g. смѣю, грѣеть, успѣль. For -дѣть dress, v. § 57, II.

For пѣть, v. following sub-section (ε).

(ε) Verbs in -ыть.

[For быть to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. крыть to cover, мыть to wash, выть to howl, рыть to dig, пыть to grieve, and пѣть to sing, which accents the termination; пою, поёшь, поётъ, поёмъ, поёте, поютъ.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *ii*, and крыть may be taken as an abbreviated form of крёеть. One example will illustrate them all.

*Infinitive*: крыть

*Verbal noun*: крѣtie\*

*Past participle pass.*: крѣтъ\*

*Past participle act.*: крѣвшій

*Past gerundive act.*: крѣвъ, крѣвши

*Past*: крѣль, крѣла, крѣло, крѣли

*Present*: крѣю, крѣешь, крѣеть, крѣемъ, крѣете, крѣють

*Present participle pass.*: (крѣмый)

*Imperative*: крѣй, крѣйте

---

\* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (8) (γ) (ε), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in т and not in п.

II. Verbs with an infinitive in -ать, -ять; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like *желаю* or *дѣлаю*.

		Present.	Accentuation.
та́ять	to thaw	та́ю	fixed
ла́ять	to bark	ла́ю	"
ка́пать	to trickle	ка́плю (ка́паю)	"
ма́зать	to anoint	ма́жу	"
рѣ́зать	to cut	рѣ́жу	"
чу́ять	to scent	чу́ю	"
прѣ́тать	to hide	прѣ́чу	"
вѣ́ять	to wave	вѣ́ю	"
ора́ть	to plough	ору́ю	"
наде́яться	to hope	наде́юсь	"
пла́кать	to weep	пла́чу	"
дви́гать	to move	дви́жу (дви́гаю)	"
писа́ть	to write	пишú, but пишешь, variable пи́шутъ, and пи́санный	
сме́яться	to laugh	сме́юсь	invariable
вяза́ть	to bind	вяза́ю	variable
дрема́ть	to sleep	дрема́ю	"
шепта́ть	to whisper	шепча́ю	"
сказа́ть	to say	скажу́	"
лепетáть	to stammer	лепеча́ю	"

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of *писа́ть*.

*Notice.*—(1) *стена́ть*, to groan, has mixed forms: *стена́ю*, *стена́ешь*, etc., or *стони́ю*, *сто́нешь*, etc.; past, *стена́лъ* or *стона́лъ*.

- (2) колебáть to rock, колебл<sup>ю</sup> or колебáю, колебл<sup>ешь</sup> or колебáешь, etc.
- (3) слáть to send, шл<sup>ю</sup>, шл<sup>ешь</sup>, шл<sup>ётъ</sup>, шл<sup>ёте</sup>, шл<sup>ють</sup> (imperfective -сылáть).
- (4) стлáть to spread, стел<sup>ю</sup>, стел<sup>ешь</sup>, etc., стел<sup>ють</sup>; past стлáлъ, стлáла, стлáло, стлáли (iter. -стилáть)
- (5) дыхáть to breathe, дыш<sup>у́</sup>, дыш<sup>ешь</sup>, дыш<sup>уть</sup> or дыхáю, дыхáешь, etc., in compounds.
- (6) стрáдáть to suffer, стрáжду or стрáдаю in the 1st person; otherwise стрáдаю, стрáдаешь, etc. стрáжду is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been стрáжу.

### § 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### *The Derivative Verbs.*

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation:—

(1) With the infinitive in -ать or -ять, and stem in -а-, -я-, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. д <sup>ѣ</sup> ло thing	д <sup>ѣ</sup> лать to do
раб <sup>о</sup> та work	раб <sup>о</sup> тать to work
печáть printing	печáтать to print
люб <sup>ѣ</sup> зникъ lady's man	люб <sup>ѣ</sup> зничать to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хвор <sup>ы́</sup> ill	хворáть to be ill
ласкá affection	ласкáть to dandle

(2) With the infinitive in -ѣть *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.



e.g. зеленѣть	to become green	(зелёный)
богатѣть	to become rich	(богатый)
желтѣть	to become yellow	(жёлтый)
слабѣть	to become weak	(слабый)
мужать	to become a man	(мужь)

*Remember*—ж, ш, ч, щ + ѣ in Russian make жа, ша, ча, ща. [v. §§ 37 and 2 (3).]

These derivatives in -ѣть are all oxytone. Except:—

(a) A few words, e.g. угрюмый surly, угрюмѣть.

(β) In accordance with the same principle of conserving the accent of the noun or adjective all inceptives in -ѣть, from adjectives in -авый, -ивый, -овый, -атый, retain the adjectival accent.

e.g. кровавѣть	to become bloody
милостивѣть	to become merciful
косматѣть	to become shaggy
безлюдѣть	to become depopulated (безъ людей)
обезпáмáть	to lose memory (безъ пáмáти)

*For full model of conjugation of these derivatives, all of which have a fixed accent, v. § 47, желать.*

(3) I. *Derivatives in -овать, -евать, e.g. чѣствовать from чѣство feeling.*

<i>Infinitive:</i>	чѣствовать	горевать
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	чѣствованiе	гореванiе
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	—	—
<i>„ ger. and part. act.:</i>	чѣствовавший, -ши	горевавший, -ши
<i>Past:</i>	чѣствовала	горевала
<i>Present:</i>	чѣствую, -ешь, etc.	горюю, -ешь, etc.
<i>Present part. act.:</i>	чѣствующий	горюющий
<i>Present gerundive:</i>	чѣствуя	горюя
<i>Imperative:</i>	чѣствуй	горюй

The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -у, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.

e.g. вѣра, вѣр<sup>а</sup>вать to believe  
 жѣртва, жѣрт<sup>в</sup>у, жѣрт<sup>в</sup>овать to sacrifice  
 бесѣда, бесѣд<sup>о</sup>вать to converse  
 вѣрварь, вѣрварств<sup>о</sup>вать to be barbarous  
 существ<sup>о</sup> а "being," существ<sup>о</sup>вать to exist  
 вой-на́, воева́ть to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These, if quadrisyllabic, accent ир<sup>о</sup>вать; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, и́р<sup>о</sup>вать.

e.g. акклиматизи́р<sup>о</sup>вать to acclimatize  
 маршир<sup>о</sup>ва́ть to march  
 аплоди́р<sup>о</sup>вать to applaud  
 культиви́р<sup>о</sup>вать to cultivate, etc.

But notice—здоровый healthy, здорова́ться; здорова́юсь to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. кова́ть	to forge	кую́, куёшь	fixed accent
сова́ть	to thrust	сую́	„ „
клева́ть	to nibble	клюю́	„ „
жева́ть	to chew	жую́	„ „

(4) *Iteratives* in -а́ть, -и́ть.

There is one aspect of the Russian, called *iterative* or *frequentative*, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -а́ть, -и́ть, -а́ю, -и́ю.

e.g. дви́гать to move, perfective дви́жу [v. § 52 (3)]

-двига́ть to move, iterative -двига́ю

нача́ть to begin, perfective начну́ [v. § 49 (2)]

нача́ннать to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like жела́ю [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives* in -ыва́ть, -ива́ть.

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -ва́ть.

e.g. да́ть to give дава́ть

бы́ть to be быва́ть

ста́ть to become -става́ть

обу́ться to put on (shoes) (perf.) обува́ться

(β) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ыва́ть, -ива́ть, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. пи́сать to write пи́сывать

зва́ть to call зова́вать [v. § 49, VII.]  
and -зыва́ть

торгова́ть to trade торго́вывать

игра́ть to play и́грывать

ходи́ть to go ха́живать

говори́ть to speak гова́ривать

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. быва́ю, пи́сываю, гова́риваю, like жела́ть [v. § 47].

*Observe.*—дава́ть (from да́ть) forms its present like кова́ть [v. § 53 (3) II.], даю́, даёшь, даётъ, etc. Similarly -става́ть has -стаю́, -стаёшь, etc., and -знава́ть (from зна́ть to know), -знаю́, -знаёшь, etc.

## § 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

### *Preliminary.*

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in -ѣть for a few very common original verbs, and in -ать, -ять in four others: гна́ть to drive, спа́ть to sleep, стоа́ть to stand (connected with ста́ть to stand), and боа́ться to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in -ить, and the present terminations -ю, -ишь, -итъ, -имъ, -ите, -ять are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel и only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, вѣрнѣть, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. слаба́ weak, слаба́ть to become weak, сла́бить to make weak

ста́рь old, ста́рьтъ to become old, ста́рить to make old

бога́тъ rich, бога́тътъ to become rich, бога́тить to enrich

леда́нбѣй (from ле́дь ice), леда́нбѣтъ to freeze (intransitive), леда́нбѣтъ to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in -ить are usually

the imperfectives of primitive verbs of the first conjugation.

e.g. нести́	to carry	носите́
вести́	to carry	возите́
вести́	to lead	водят́
лечь	to lie	-ложите́ to lay
		лежат́ to lie (intrans.)

Generally speaking, these derivative verbs accent the termination throughout; there are many exceptions, some of which are detailed in § 56.

### § 55. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### *Original Verbs.*

#### I. Verbs in -ать, -ять.

	гнать	стоять	спать
	to drive	to stand	to sleep
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	гна́ние	стоя́ние	—
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	гна́нный	—	—
<i>Gerundive present :</i>	гона́	стоя́	—
<i>Present part. :</i>	гона́щий	стоя́щий	спя́щий
<i>Gerundive past :</i>	гнавъ	стоявъ	—
	гна́вши	стоя́вши	спя́вши
<i>Present :</i>	гоню́	стою́	сплю́
	го́нишь	стои́шь	спи́шь
	го́нитъ	стои́тъ	спи́тъ
	го́нимъ	стои́мъ	спи́мъ
	го́ните	стои́те	спи́те
	го́нятъ	стои́тъ	спя́тъ
<i>Imperative :</i>	гони́	стой	спи
<i>Past :</i>	гналъ	стоялъ	спалъ
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	гоня́мый	—	—

бо́яться, to fear, is conjugated like стои́тъ; the imperative is бо́йся.

## II. Verbs in -ѢТЬ.

Roots terminating in ш, ж, ч change Ѣ to а ;  
e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. горѣ́ть to burn, горю́, горѣ́шь . . . горѣ́ть  
 шумѣ́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шумѣ́шь, шумѣ́ть  
 летѣ́ть to fly, летю́, летѣ́шь, летѣ́ть  
 сидѣ́ть\* to sit, сижу́, сидѣ́шь, сидѣ́ть  
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожи́шь, дрожа́ть  
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, кричи́шь, крича́ть  
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежи́шь, лежа́ть\*  
 стуча́ть to knock, стучю́, стуча́ть  
 молча́ть\* to be silent, молчу́, молча́ть  
 боля́ть (impersonal), боли́тъ, боля́тъ  
 велѣ́ть† to command, велю́, вели́шь  
 глядя́ть\* to look at, гляжу́, гляди́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотре́ть to look at, смотрю́, смотре́шь . .  
 смотре́ть, смотре́щий, -смотре́нный  
 терпе́ть to endure, терплю́, терпи́шь . . . терпе́ть  
 (but терпи́мый, терпле́нный)  
 держа́ть to hold, держю́, держи́шь . . . держа́ть  
 (past part. pass. держа́нный)

---

\* Present gerundive *сидя, лёжа, молча, глядя́.*

† Takes the dative.

дышáть to breathe, дышú, дышпшь, дышатъ  
(Also a secondary form, дыхáть, дышú, дышешь,  
дышутъ in the third conjugation)

любѣть to love, люблю, любишь . . . любятъ,  
любящій, любимый

вертѣть, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the termination ; вертишь, вѣртитъ, вѣртятъ are also found.

висѣть to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent ; but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зависѣть.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слышать, слышу, слышатъ, etc., to hear  
видѣть, вижу, видятъ to see

*As a rough guide* it may be stated that verbs of the fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣть, if intransitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a moveable accent.

*Note.*—платѣть, to pay (плачú, платишь, платятъ, платещий), must be distinguished from плакать, плачу to weep ; платишь . . . платятъ, to pay, is sometimes written, and commonly sounded платишь . . . платятъ.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣлъ, -аь, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хотѣть to wish, and бѣжать to run, must be included. бѣжать has two irregular forms, бѣжú I run, бѣжутъ they run, and derivative forms. смотрѣть, to look, is also given in full, to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	ХОТѢТЬ	СМОТРѢТЬ	БѢЖАТЬ
<i>Past</i> :	ХОТѢЛЪ	СМОТРѢЛЪ	БѢЖАЛЪ
<i>Past gerun.</i> :	ХОТѢВЪ, ХОТѢВШИ	СМОТРѢВЪ	БѢЖАВЪ
		СМОТРѢВШИ	БѢЖАВШИ
<i>Pres. gerun.</i> :	ХОТЯ [not used]	СМОТЯ	БѢЖА
<i>Pres. part. act.</i> :	ХОТЯЩІЙ	СМОТЯЩІЙ	БѢГУЩІЙ
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	ХОТѢВШІЙ	СМОТРѢВШІЙ	БѢЖАВШІЙ
<i>Past pt. pass.</i> :	—	[о]СМОТРѢННЫЙ	—
<i>Present</i> :	Я ХОЧУ	СМОТРЮ	БѢГУ
	ТЫ ХОЧЕШЬ	СМОТРИШЬ	БѢЖИШЬ
	ОНА, ОНЪ ХОЧЕТЪ	СМОТРИТЬ	БѢЖИТЬ
	МЫ ХОТИМЪ	СМОТРИМЪ	БѢЖИМЪ
	ВЫ ХОТИТЕ	СМОТРИТЕ	БѢЖИТЕ
	ОНИ, ОНѢ ХОТЯТЪ	СМОТРЯТЪ	БѢГУТЪ
<i>Pres. pt. pass.</i> :	ХОТИМЫЙ	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> :	ХОТИ	СМОТРИ	БѢГИ

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -*ить* have a variable accent, e.g. *учить* to learn, *учу*, *учишь*; *пустить* to let go, *пущу*, *пустишь*; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. *пустятъ*, *служатъ* (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. *любя*, *любящій*, *любимый* (*любить* to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. *хватить* to seize, *хвачу*, *хватишь*, *хваченный*.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. *простить* to forgive, *прощу*, *простишь*, *прощенный*, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. *даръ* gift, *дарить* to present, *диво* marvel, *удивиться* to marvel.



## § 56. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Derivative Verbs.*

The infinitive *always* ends in -пть, and the accentuation is fixed; v. § 47 for an example.

As stated in § 54 these derivative verbs are mostly accented on the terminations.

e.g. from adjectives and nouns:—

чёрный	black	чёрнѣть	to blacken
пьяный	drunk	пьянѣть	to make drunk
хитрый	cunning	хитрѣть	{ to dodge to be cunning
мѹка*	torment	мѹчить	to torture
грусть	sorrow	грустить	to grieve

But those derived from verbs mostly have a variable accent, e.g. ставѣть (ста́влю, ста́вишь), носѣть, возѣть, водѣть, будѣть (to place, carry, convey, lead, awaken), from стать, нестѣ, везѣть, вестѣ, бѣдѣть, v. § 54.

But very many conserve the original accent, especially if the verb has more than two syllables.

e.g. спорѣ	dispute	спорѣть	to dispute
ссора	quarrel	ссора́ться	to quarrel
сла́бый	weak	сла́бить	to weaken
ста́рый	old	ста́рнѣть	to make old
кѣ́слый	acid	кѣ́слѣть	make acid
ни́зь	low down	ни́знѣть	to degrade
ни́щій	poor	ни́щнѣть	to impoverish
вѣ́ра	faith	вѣ́рнѣть	to believe

---

\* Distinguish from мукá flour: мучи́ть to flour.

*Trisyllabic* :—

гото́вый ready	гото́вить to make ready (past part. pass. гото́вленный)
эконо́мъ economical	эконо́мить to economize (trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

e.g. бога́тый rich	богати́ть to enrich
весёлый merry	весели́ть enliven
зеле́ный green	зелеви́ть to make green
зото́ gold	золоти́ть to gild (золоче́нный)
ле́дь ice, icy	леде́нить to freeze
го́воръ speech	говори́ть to say

### § 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

#### I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) ре́вѣть, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. ре́вѣу, ре́вѣшь . . . ре́вѣтъ, and therefore all derivative forms such as ре́вѣючи́и, ре́вѣа (gerundive), etc.

(β) хотѣ́ть to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) -дѣ́ть (only used in compounds, одѣ́ть to dress, etc.) and стая́, to stand, form their present in дѣ́ву, дѣ́нешь; стая́у, стая́нешь; and belong to the first conjugation.

- (δ) посѣтѣть to visit, обратѣть to direct, from the 1st person present in щ instead of ч; thus, посѣщѣу́, посѣтѣ́шь; обращѣу́, обратѣ́шь.
- (ε) -шибѣть (only used in compounds, e.g. ошибѣ́ться make a mistake, perfective; imperfective ошиба́ться, ошиба́юсь, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. ошибѣ́уся, ошибѣ́тся . . . ошибѣ́тся; past ошибѣ́ся, ошибѣ́лась, ошибѣ́лось, ошибѣ́лись. The participles are ошиба́ющійся, ошибѣ́и́йся; gerundives, ошиба́ясь, ошибѣ́и́сь.
- (ζ) Distinguish зрѣ́ть, зрю, зрятъ [-зрѣ́ншій] to look at; and зрѣ́ть to ripen, зрѣ́ю, зрѣ́ешь, etc.

## II. Using different roots.

E.g. in English "to be," "I was," "to go," "I went."

(1) идѣ́ forms its present from the root ид, its past from шел. e.g.

*Present*: идѣ́у, идѣ́ешь . . . идѣ́уть

*Present part. and gerundive*: идѣ́ущій, идѣ́и

*Past*: шѣ́ль, шла, шло, шли

*Past part. act. and gerundive*: шѣ́дшій, шѣ́дши

(2) бѣ́ть to be

*Verbal noun*: бѣ́гнѣ

*Present*: е́сть; су́ть

*Past*: бѣ́ль, бѣ́ла, бѣ́ло, бѣ́ли

*Future*: бѣ́ду, бѣ́дешь, бѣ́детъ, бѣ́демъ, бѣ́дете, бѣ́дутъ

*Future participle*: бѣ́дущій. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

*Past participle*: бѣ́вшій

*Past gerundive*: бѣ́вши отъ бѣ́въ

*Imperative*: бѣ́дь, бѣ́дѣте

- (3) *ѣхать*, to drive, has as its present form *ѣду*, *ѣдешь*, *ѣдетъ*, *ѣдемъ*, *ѣдете*, *ѣдутъ*, and thence the gerundive *ѣдучи*, the participle *ѣдущій*, the imperative *ѣзжай* or *ѣзди*; but in the past *ѣхалъ*, *ѣхавъ*, etc.; *ѣзжать* (iterative).

The present tense of *быть* is scarcely ever used. *есть* and *суть* only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. *Богъ есть истина* God is the truth; otherwise, *Пётръ очень мудръ* Peter is very wise, *это моё*, а *то твоё* this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of *быть* are peculiar. The future tense is *-буду*, e.g. *забыть* to forget, *забуду*.

*пробыть* to stay (perfective), *пробывать* (imperfective)

*пзбыть*, *пзбывать* to lose or squander

*выбыть*, *выбывать* to retire, resign

*добыть*, *добывать* to obtain

*перебыть*, *перебывать* to frequent

*прибыть*, *прибывать* to arrive or increase; *прибыль* (fem.) profit

*отбыть*, *отбывать* to depart or serve (time)

*убыть*, *убывать* to decrease

### III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) *здать*, to build, has a reduplicated present *зѣзжу*, *зѣждешь*, *зѣждетъ*, *зѣждемъ*, *зѣждете*, *зѣждутъ*; and thence *зѣждущій*, *зѣждущи*; and the imperative *зѣжди* (*зѣжди*). For the past tenses it is like *знаю*.

(2) There are four verbs in "m," like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μι*,

(α) **ВѢМЪ** I know (root **ВѢД\***).

This is entirely obsolete; but one form survives in the expression **Богъ вѣсть** God knows.

The derivatives are numerous, e.g. **вѣдомый** known, **вѣдомость** the gazette or the news.

The infinitive **вѣсть** is also a feminine noun, meaning "news"; the iterative form **вѣдать** is in common use in compound verbs; **-вѣдать** being the perfective and **-вѣдывать** the imperfective; the old imperative **вѣдъ** survives as a conjunction, more or less equivalent to *voici*.

(β) **есмь**, *v. antea* under **быть**.

(γ) **ѣсть** to eat (root **ѣд**).

*Present*: **ѣмь, ѣшь, ѣстѣ, † ѣдѣмъ, ѣдѣте, ѣдѣтъ**

*Imperative* (irregular): **ѣшь, ѣшьте**

*Past*: **ѣлъ, ѣла, ѣло, ѣли**

*Part. and gerundives*: **ѣдѣ, ѣдѣщій, ѣвши, ѣвшій, ѣдомый, -ѣденный**

(δ) **дать** to give (perfective). The present form (perfective future):—

**дамъ, дашь, дастѣ, дамъ, дадите, дадутъ**

The imperfective forms are supplied by **давать**.  
[v. § 53 (5).]

*Imperative*: **дай**

*Past*: **далъ, дала, далó, дали**

*Part. and gerundives*: **давши, давшій, даанный**

\* Greek *οἶδα*, English "I wot."

† Cf. Latin *est* he is, *est* he eats; German *ist* and *isst*.

## § 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

*Preliminary.*

In § 42 (2) (ii) the “aspects” of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accidence of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English “I have read,” and the Latin *gavisus sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. я свистѣлъ I whistled, is “j'ai sifflé”; я свистнулъ is “je sifflai”; я свистѣлъ is “je sifflais,” I was whistling; я свистывалъ I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these “aspects” has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. УЧИТЬ-ЛИ ВАШЪ МАЛЪЧИКЪ СВОИ УРОКИ ?

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule)?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ вѣучитъ сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ онъ бѣдетъ ходѣтъ въ школу съ понедѣльника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я бѣду стоять ежеднѣвно на однѣмъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стану can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Съ бѣдущаго гѣда ты станешь рабѣтать въ конторѣ.

From next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыба плаваетъ бѣстро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), the *concrete* этотъ пловецъ плывѣтъ очень хорошѣ this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. чернѣтъ to become black, почернѣтъ to turn black. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходѣте-ли вы часто въ театрѣ? Нѣтъ, тепѣрь не хожу, но когдѣ-то хаживалъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -нутъ [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. Запрещено́ стуча́ть въ окно́.

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective: стуча́ть, стучу́.)

Кто́ это́ тамъ стучи́тъ въ дверь?

Who is that knocking at the door?

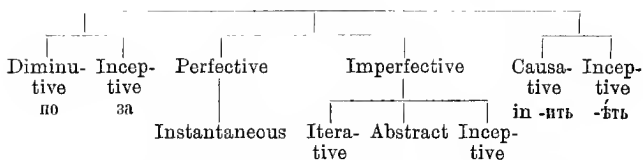
Я не могъ войти́, такъ стукнулъ.

I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in -ить and -ѣть [v. § 53].

	Intrans.	Trans.	
e.g. зелёный green	зеленѣть	зеленить	
слабый weak	слабѣть	слабить	etc.

### *Aspects.*



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. предвидѣть to foresee

зависѣть to depend

содержа́ть (содержи́тъ) to contain

принадлежа́ть (-жу́, -жи́тъ) to belong

подлежа́ть to be subject to

сожале́ть (-ѣю) to regret

предстои́ть (-стою́) to impend

сочувствова́ть to sympathize

предчу́вствовать to forebode



## § 59. THE FORMATION OF THE ASPECTS.

I. *From original verbs.*

## (1) First conjugation.

The simplest form of the un-compounded verb is imperfective.

e.g. печь to bake  
жечь to burn  
нести to carry, etc.

With these may be reckoned the primitives of the third and fourth conjugations.

e.g. слать шлю I send  
бить бью I beat  
спать сплю I sleep  
гвать гоню́ I drive

There are some exceptions :—

e.g. сѣсть сѣду́ I shall sit down  
лечь лягу́ I shall lie down  
стать стану́ I shall become  
дать дамъ I shall give  
пасть паду́ I shall fall

The perfectives of monosyllabic verbs are formed with prepositions, i.e. by compounding the verb.

The imperfectives of сѣсть, etc., are :—

сѣсть садѣться  
лечь ложѣться  
стать становѣться (становлюсь, станѣвится)  
дать давать [v. § 53 (5)]  
пасть па́дать, па́даю

But these verbs, *when uncompounded*, form iteratives out of the full root with an -ать suffix.

e.g. слать	to send	-сылать
брать	to take	-бирать
ждать	to wait	-ждать
драть	to tear	-дирать
звать	to call	-зывать
жечь	to burn	-жигать
тереть	to rub	-тирать
жать	to press	-жимать
жать	to reap	-жинать
ѣсть	to eat	-ѣдать
[вѣсть]	to know	вѣдать

*Similarly* in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g. бить	to beat	бивать
дуть	to blow	дувать
знать	to know	знавать, etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between -знаю, -знаешь, etc. (from -зпать), and -знаю, -знаёшь, etc. (from -знавать). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compounded, the imperfective takes the derivative form in -ать, and the perfective the original form in -ть, -чь.

e.g. сжечь	to burn down,	сожру́ I shall burn down,
	сжигать (imperfective),	сжигáю I am burning
	down	
помочь	to help,	помогу́ I shall help; помога́ть
	(imperfective)	

Similarly призна́ть to recognise, призна́ю I shall recognise; but imperfective признава́ть, признаю́ I recognise

<i>but</i>	{ забывáть (imperf.)	забывáю I forget
	{ забы́ть (perf.)	забúду I shall forget
	{ разсѣвáть (imperf.)	разсѣвáю I disperse
	{ разсѣ́ять (perf.)	разсѣ́ю I shall disperse
	{ умирáть (imperf.)	умира́ю I am dying
	{ умерѣ́ть (perf.)	умрú I shall die
	{ понимáть (imperf.)	понимáю I understand
	{ повя́ть (perf.)	поймú I shall understand
		[v. § 49, II.]
	{ возставáть (imperf.)	возстаю́ I rise
{ возста́ть (perf.)	возстанú I shall rise	
{ выно́сить (imperf.)	выношú I carry away	
{ вв́ести (perf.)	вв́несу I shall carry away	

*Observe.*—прочѣсть, прочтáть to read through (perfective); прочítывать (imperfective).

### (2) Second conjugation in -нуть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. угáснуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense угáсь; засóхнуть to dry, засóхъ; кíнуть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кíнулъ.

Perfectives in -нуть are often called “instantaneous” or “semelfactive,” because they denote a single action.

e.g. кричáть to shout, крíкнуть to shout on one occasion  
дерзáть, дерзнúть to venture

### (3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).

Derivative verbs in -ѣть are "inceptive" in meaning, e.g. зеленѣть, viridescere, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in -ать, -ять are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. дѣлать to do, сдѣлать.

Most original verbs in -ать, such as писать to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. писать, perfective написать.

Thus напишú means "I shall write."

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in -ать and -ывать. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. -честь, -чту: читать to read (imperfective),  
 прочесть (perfective), читаю (iterative)  
 I read now and then.

звать to call (perfective in compounds only),  
 e.g. созвать to call together (imperfective)  
 созывать).

Verbs whose radical vowel is o change the o to a in forming the iterative.

e.g. ломать to break ломывать  
 бросать to throw брасывать  
 (abstract sense: бросить concrete)

and even усвоить to appropriate усваивать

In some cases, the difference between the imperfective and iterative is merely accentual, the iterative termination *-ать* being always accented.

Imperfective.		Iterative.	
e.g. двѣгаться	move	онъ двѣжется	двѣгать -двѣгáль
бѣгать	run	бѣгаю	-бѣгáть -бѣгáль
пóлзать	creep	пóлзаю	-ползáть -ползáль
пáдать	fall	пáдаю	-падáть -падáль

*This distinction only applies to some original verbs of the type of писать [v. § 52 (3)], in which the suffixal vowel -a- is dropped in the formation of the present; such verbs having a fixed accent in the imperfective on the root, and the infinitive termination -ать unaccented.*

#### (4) Fourth conjugation.

Many of the original verbs in *-ить* or *-ѣть*, *-ю*, *-ишь*, have another form of conjugation in *-ять*, like the iteratives in *-ать*. In some cases the original form in *-ить*, *-ѣть* is perfective, the imperfective being in *-ать* (as was seen to be the rule in monosyllabic verbs like *знать*, *мочь*, *беречь*, *знавать*, *могáть*, *-берегáть*); in others the original form in *-ить* is imperfective, and the alternative *-ять* or *ать* has an *abstract* meaning.

Again, some verbs in *-ить* derived from intransitive monosyllabic verbs, such as *лечь*, *стать*, etc., are causative.

Perfective.		Imperfective.	
e.g. простѣть	to forgive*	прощáть	
явѣть	show	явлáть	

---

\* Простѣться say farewell, простѣте good-bye.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	лишѣть	deprive	лишáть
	пустѣть	permit	пускáть
	ступѣть	tread	ступáть
	хватѣть	seize	хватáть
	купѣть	buy	покупáть (distinguish)
			купáть to bathe)
	родѣться	be born	рождáться*
	наслаждѣться	enjoy	наслаждáться*
	посѣѣть	visit	посѣщáть*
	убѣдѣть	to convince	убѣждáть*

## Imperfective.

	<i>Abstract or habitual.</i>		<i>Concrete meaning.</i>
e.g.	летáть	fly	летѣть [v. § 58]
	плáвать	swim	плыть
	бѣгать	run	бѣжáть ( <i>but</i> -бѣгáть iterative)
	сажáть	plant	садѣть
	ломáть	break	ломѣть

Similarly

носѣть	carry	несть
водѣть	lead	вестѣ
возѣть	bear	везѣ
лáзить	climb	лѣзть
блистáть	shine	блестѣть
гонáть	drive	гнать

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -ать, -ять is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g.	отплывáть	отплыть	to swim away
	убѣгáть	убѣжáть	to run away

---

\* Church Slav change of д to ж, and т to ш.

- e.g. Я ломаю карандашъ.  
I (generally) break pencils.  
Медвѣдь ломится въ дверь.  
The bear is breaking into the door.  
Корабль отплываётъ.  
The ship is leaving port.  
Лодка уже отплыла отъ берега.  
The boat has left the shore.  
Пѣмцы убѣгають отъ штыка.  
Germans run away from the bayonet.  
Собака схватила кость и убѣжала.  
The dog snatched the bone and ran away.  
Пѣмцы пришли во Францію, затѣмъ чтобы грабить.  
The Germans came into France to plunder.  
Пѣмцы пришли въ Бельгію и ограбили всё городá.  
The Germans came into Belgium and plundered all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

	Imperfective.		Iterative.
e.g.	хранить	keep	-хранить
	видѣть	see	видать

In compound verbs the form in -ать, -ять is used for imperfectives, the form in -ить for perfectives.

- e.g. Отвѣчу I shall answer.  
Отвѣчаю I am answering.  
Разорю ваши городá и селенія.  
I will destroy your cities and settlements.  
Въ продолженіе двухъ мѣсяцевъ король разорилъ непріятельскіе городá.  
For two months the king had been destroying the hostile cities.

Generally the iteratives are formed in -ивать or -ывать, verbs in -ѣть taking -ывать.

e.g. говорѣть	speak	говаривать
просѣть	ask	прашивать
ходѣть	go	хаживать
глядѣть	look at	глядывать
видѣть	see	видывать

## II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in -ѣть, -ать and -ить.

Most verbs in -ѣть are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if uncompounded, have no perfective.

e.g. слабѣть to become weak

Verbs in -ать form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like писать, пишу́, пи́шетъ, as well as to derivatives, such as желать, пожела́ть.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; на, разъ, по, о, у, вы, съ, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

e.g. дѣлать	to do	Perfective. сдѣлать
желать	to wish	пожела́ть
владѣть	to possess	овладѣ́ть
смотре́ть	to look	посмотрѣ́ть
видѣть	to see	увидѣ́ть
писать	to write	написа́ть
трати́ть	to spend	истрати́ть

Verbs in -ить mostly have a secondary form -ять, which in the uncompounded verb has an iterative



meaning. Some un-compounded imperfective verbs in -ить form their perfectives, like those in -ать, by compounding with a particle.

e.g. строи́ть	to build	постро́ить
гра́бить	to plunder	огра́бить
серди́ться	to be angry	разсерди́ться
трево́жить	to disquiet	встрево́жить
плати́ть	to pay	заплати́ть

Again no general rule can be stated.

### III. Aspects formed from a different root.

Of these there are very few.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	идти́	to go	ходи́ть
	пойма́ть	to catch	лови́ть ( <i>but</i> поня́ть un- derstand, понима́ть)
	уда́рить	to strike	бити, and уда́рить
	положи́ть	to lay	класть (кладу́)
	взять	to take	бра́ть
	Concrete.		Abstract. Iterative.
e.g.	ѣхать	to drive	ѣздить ѣзжа́ть
	слы́шать (слы́шу)	to hear	слыха́ть (слышу́)
	дыша́ть (дыши́ть)	to breathe	дыха́ть (дышетъ)

e.g. Я ѣзжу въ городъ ка́ждый день.  
I go to the city every day.

Я ѣхалъ домой (въ каре́тъ).

I drove home (in a carriage).

Почти́ ежедне́вно хожу́ домой пѣшкомъ.

Когда-то я ѣзжалъ съ ба́риномъ.

Almost every day I walk home; but  
sometimes I drove with the master.

IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in -áть, -íть, -ывать, -ивать; if a derivative form exists in -ить this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in -áть, -íть, -ывать conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	вы́нести	{ to carry out to endure }	выно́сить
	объ́хать	to drive round	объѣ́зжать
	вы́везти	{ to cart out to take about (in a carriage) }	вывози́ть
	вы́вести	to lead about	выводи́ть
	вы́звать	to summon	вызыва́ть
	вы́играть	to gain at play	выи́грывать

*Observe.*—вы takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompound verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. избра́нъ chosen [v. § 49, II.], на́нять, про́далъ, etc.

e.g.	вы́йти	to go out	выходи́ть
	провести́	to pass (time)	проводи́ть
	обнови́ть	to renew	обновля́ть
<i>Observe</i>	положи́ть	suppose	полага́ть
	уложи́ть	pack	уклада́вать
	доложи́ть	report (a fact)	доклада́вать

*Observe:—*

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
	выбѣжать	to run out	выбѣгать
<i>but</i>	выбѣгать	to attain by a run	выбѣгивать
	выйти	to go away	выходить
<i>but</i>	выходить	to gain	выхаживать
	заѣхать (заѣду)	to go beyond	заѣзжать
<i>but</i>	заѣзжать	to tire out	заѣзживать
	провести	to lead through	проводить
<i>but</i>	проводить	to accompany	провождать, or проваживать

*In some cases the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нуть.*

e.g.	двинуть	to move	двигать
	кивнуть	to nod	кивать
	тронуть	to touch	трогать
	шепнуть	to whisper	шептать
	крикнуть	to cry	кричать
	вдохнуть	to sigh	вдыхать

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the un-compounded verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

e.g.	промѣднить	to delay	промѣдливать
	обмануть	to deceive	обманывать
	погаснуть*	to be extinguished	погасать
	погибнуть*	to perish	погибать
	взглянуть	to look up	взглядывать
	замкнуть	to lock up	замыкать

*Observe.*—тянуть (imperfective) to pull, тягивать; but in compounds, протянуть to stretch forth, протягивать. [v. § 50, I.]

\* But past tense погѣбъ, погасъ.

e.g. Онъ вы́тянулъ о́громаго лещá.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ива́нь Ива́нычъ тя́нетъ ля́мку дóбраго семья́нина.

Iván Iványč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой другъ неоднократно вы́тýгивалъ мени́ изъ т́уднаго положéния.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are :—

Perfective.

узнáть

recognise

ослабѣ́ть

to become weak

осла́бнуть (semelfactive)

повѣ́рить

to confide

поручи́ть

to commission

продол́жить

to continue

помѣ́тить

to mark

убѣ́жать

to run away

переплѣ́ть

to swim through

уѣ́хать

to drive away

(in a carriage)

отогна́ть

to drive off

описа́ть

to describe

пригото́вить

to prepare

придѣ́лать

to affix

прижѣ́чь

to cauterize

приказа́ть

to command

прими́рить

to reconcile

избра́ть

to choose

Imperfective.

узнава́ть (узнаю́)

[§ 53 (5)]

ослабѣ́вать

повѣ́рять

поруча́ть

продолжа́ть

помѣ́чать

убѣ́гать

переплыва́ть

уѣ́зжать

отгона́ть

описыва́ть

приготовля́ть

придѣ́лывать

прижига́ть

приказы́вать

прими́рять

избира́ть

The learner must *not* confuse those verbs derived from *compound nouns or adjectives*. Such verbs are naturally imperfective, as the formative stem contains the particle, which is not added to the verb.

	Imperfective.	Perfective.
e.g. безъ покоя without rest	безпоко́ить disturb	обезпоко́ить
ра́зумъ reason	разумѣ́ть understand	уразумѣ́ть
обѣ́дъ dinner	обѣ́даты dine	пообѣ́даты
забо́та trouble	забо́тятся	озабо́тятся
наслѣ́дство inheritance	наслѣ́довать	унаслѣ́довать
предчу́вствие foreboding	предчу́вствовать	
сочу́вствие sympathy	сочу́вствовать [v. § 58]	
безъ люде́й without people	безлю́дѣть to become de- populated (обезлю́дѣть perf.)	

The accentuation of compounded verbs is that of the simple, save with **вы**, v. § 59, IV.

*Except* вто́рить to repeat  
повтори́ть to repeat, imperfective повтори́ть  
ясни́ться to clear up (of the weather)  
изъясни́ть explain, imperfective изъясни́ть

#### V. *Causatives and inceptives.*

As stated in § 53 (1) and § 54, verbs derived from adjectives have transitive forms in -и́ть, and intransitives in -ѣ́ть.

e.g. сини́й blue, синѣ́ть to turn blue, сини́ть to  
make blue  
мя́гкий soft, смягчи́ть and размягча́ть  
сла́дкий sweet, услади́ть and усладя́ть  
молодо́й young, молодѣ́ть to grow young,  
молоди́ть to make young, etc., etc.

Similarly, transitive verbs in **-ТЬ** are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. <b>лечь</b> to lie down	<b>положить</b> to lay
<b>сѣсть</b> to sit down	<b>посадить</b> to seat
<b>стать</b> to stand ( <b>ста́ну</b> )	<b>станови́ться</b> to stand, and <b>ста́вить</b> to place

e.g. **Я поста́вилъ ва́зу на коло́нну.**  
I put the vase on the column.

VI. **по** and **за** as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.

**по** when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. **мы́ться** to wash  
**помы́ться** to have just a wash  
**пому́тить** to create squabbles  
**поку́ривать, покури́ть**, to smoke occasionally  
**поку́шать** (perfective **поѣ́сть**) to have food  
**пока́рмливать** (**покорми́ть**) to feed slightly  
**пока́чивать**, to waver (**покача́ть** perfective,  
**покачну́ть** to shake)  
**пока́шлять** to cough a little (**покашли́вать**)

**за** often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. **закипа́ть** (**закипи́ть** perfective) to simmer  
**завѣшива́ть** (**завѣсита́ть**) to veil  
**засвиста́ть** to begin whistling  
**засме́яться** to begin laughing  
**засыха́ть** (**засохну́ть**) to dry up  
**затону́ть** to sink (**затапли́вать, затопи́ть** perfective, transitive)

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. *Русские затопили\* корабли въ Севастопольской бухтѣ.*

The Russians sank ships in the Bay of Sebastopol.

### § 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. *я дѣлаюсь* I become, *дѣлается*, *дѣлавшись*, etc.

*родиться* to be born, *родится*, *родился*, *родились*  
or *родились*.

*Deponent* verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. *я моюсь* I wash myself, I wash

*король вернулся домой* the King has returned home

*стыдиться* to feel ashamed †

\* Distinguish *затопить*, *затопляемый* (*затоплять*) to sink; and *затопить*, *затопленный*, *затопливать*, to heat.

† Distinguish *стыдъ* shame, *стыдиться*; and *стыть* (perfective), *стынуть* (imperfective) to be cold.

Similarly in French “se suicider,” “s’approcher de” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *сь* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place.

e.g. Алексѣй не владѣеть собой.

Alexis has no self-control.

Мальчикъ взлѣзъ на крышу, упалъ и убится.

The boy crawled on to the roof, fell and was killed.

Онъ покóнчилъ съ собой.

He committed suicide [ended with himself].

Онъ оговорился, что его цифры могутъ быть невѣрны, и этимъ оградилъ себя отъ всякихъ нареканій.

He justified himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не пользовалъ своего положенія, а я провёлъ своё время безполéзнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time in a useless fashion.

Я всегда имѣю при себѣ портретъ жены.

I always have my wife’s portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. Комната была убрана цвѣтами.

The room was decorated with flowers.



(2) With the verb in the third person plural, with the indefinite meaning of "one," "on," "man."

e.g. Зову́тъ меня́ по фами́лии Монача́вымъ.

My family name is Monákhov [they call me . . . .]

The reflexive forms are never used loosely to express "one another." Thus [v. § 82, IV.] :—

Наро́ды Росси́и, А́нглии, Фра́нции и Герма́нии  
убива́ютъ другъ дру́га.

The peoples of Russia, England, France and  
Germany are slaying one another.

Слѣ́довали другъ за дру́гомъ.

They followed each other.

## THE NUMERALS.

### § 61. PRELIMINARY.

The inflection of the Russian numerals is at first sight very difficult. The problem can be simplified.

(a) In the first place, nearly all the numerals are nouns, and are therefore followed by the genitive plural.

(β) Secondly, being nouns, when compounded, e.g. двѣ́сти (two hundred), each part follows its own declension.

(γ) Thirdly, два, три, четы́ре, 2, 3 and 4, take the equivalent of the old dual, i.e. the genitive singular.

(δ) Fourthly, the noun in ordinals is governed by the last element of the numeral.

e.g. пять козъ five goats

but двѣ козы́ two goats (коза́, plural козы́)

три рубля́ three roubles (plural рублѣ́)

три́дцать три поѣзда́ thirty-three trains

Also сто one hundred

двѣсти two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

триста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсо́тъ five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

### § 62. I.—*The Numerals 1-10.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.	Collective.*	Fraction.
1	одинъ	Adj.	пѣрвый		
2	два	„	второй	двое, пара	половина
3	три	„	третій†	трое	треть ‡
4	четыре	„	четвёртый	четыре	чѣтверть‡
5	пять	Noun	пѣтый	пѣтеро	пѣтая§
6	шесть	„	шестой	ше́теро	шестая§
7	семь	„	седьмой	се́теро	etc.
8	во́семь	„	восьмой	во́смеро	
9	де́вять	„	девя́тый	де́вятеро	
10	де́сять	„	деся́тый	де́сятеро	

These are the ten simple forms.

\* The most common are двое, трое, четверо, пѣтеро, се́теро; but all are equally common in the form вдвое, втрое, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated: у него́ двое, трое, четверо, дѣтей: пять, шесть, семь, etc., челове́къ дѣтей; of an assembly, ихъ бу́детъ пять, etc., челове́къ.

† Declined like бара́ний [v. § 34 (3)].

‡ Feminines in я.

§ Supply часть part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Одѣнь is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel “и” drops out.

Thus—одѣнь, одѣо, одѣа, одѣогó, одѣой, etc.

<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	одѣи	одѣѣ
Gen. Loc.	одѣихъ	одѣѣхъ
Dat.	одѣимъ	одѣѣмъ
Instr.	одѣими	одѣѣми

The plural means “some,” cf. English “the ones.” Both forms, одѣи, одѣѣ, are generally sounded alike (одѣи).

e.g. Вѣдь на ѣтихъ полкахъ осталоь тольо дѣсять книгъ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У менѣ осталоь лишъ три рублѣ.

I have only three roubles left.

Какъ на бѣдѣ у менѣ осталоь тольо три яйца.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, чѣтыре are declined as follows:—

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.		
e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ	три	чѣтыре
Gen. Loc.	двухъ		трѣхъ	чѣтырѣхъ
Dat.	двумъ		трѣмъ	чѣтырѣмъ
Instr.	двумѣ		трѣмѣ	чѣтырѣмѣ

пять to дѣсять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom.	пять
Gen. Dat. Loc.	пяти
Instr.	пятью

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique

cases they take the case of the nouns; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

оба, обоѣ both, is declined similarly to два.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	оба	обоѣ
Gen. Loc.	обѣихъ	обоѣихъ
Dat.	обѣимъ	обоѣимъ
Instr.	обѣими	обоѣими

## II.—The Numerals 11–90.

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
11	одиннадцать	Noun	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	„	двѣнадцатый (collective дюжина)
13	тринадцать	„	тринадцатый
14	четырнадцать	„	четырнадцатый
15	пятнадцать	„	пятнадцатый
16	шестнадцать	„	шестнадцатый
17	семнадцать	„	семнадцатый
18	восемнадцать	„	восемнадцатый
19	девятнадцать	„	девятнадцатый
20	двадцать	„	двадцатый
21	двадцать одинъ [v. § 61 (8)]		двадцать первый
22	двадцать два, etc.	„	двадцать второй, etc.
30	тридцать	Noun	тридцатый
40	сорокъ	„	сороковой
50	пятьдесятъ*	„	пятидесятый
60	шестьдесятъ	„	шестидесятый
70	семьдесятъ	„	семидесятый
80	восемьдесятъ	„	восемьдесятый
90	девяносто	„	девяностый

For the fractions, v. пять.

\* Sounded pidd'isyát'.

The cardinals from 11–90 are mere compositions of the simple forms and *дѣсять* (10).

(1) The “teens” are formed by saying one-on-ten, two-on-ten; the preposition *на* is accented, except in *одѣнадцати* and *четыринадцать*, and *дѣсять* is contracted to *дцать*.

The numbers 11–19 are all declined like *дѣсять*.

e.g. Nom.	<i>семнадцать</i>
Gen. Dat. Loc.	<i>семнадцати</i>
Instr.	<i>семнадцатью</i>

(2) The numbers 20 and 30 are similar compounds, two-ten, three-ten. They are declined thus:—

Nom.	<i>тридцать</i>
Gen. Dat. Loc.	<i>тридцати</i>
Instr.	<i>тридцатью</i>

(3) *сорокъ* (40), and *девяносто* (90), are nouns of the first declension, but the only inflections are *a* and *y*. *сорокъ* accents the termination throughout.

(4) The cardinals 50, 60, 70, 80 decline both parts *separately and similarly*.

e.g. Nom. Voc. Acc.	<i>сѣмьдесятъ</i>
Gen. Loc. Dat.	<i>сѣмидесяти</i>
Instr.	<i>сѣмьюдесятю</i>

As though the two words were not written together.

### III.—*The Numerals 100–1,000,000.*

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
100	<i>сто</i>	Noun	<i>сѣтый*</i>
200	<i>двѣсти</i>	Adj. & noun (joined)	<i>двухсѣтый</i>
300	<i>триста</i>	” ”	<i>трѣхсѣтый</i>
400	<i>четыриста</i>	” ”	<i>четырёхсѣтый</i>

\* Collective *сѣтя*,

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсо́тъ	Two nouns	пя́тисо́тый
600	шестьсо́тъ	„ „	ше́стисо́тый
700	семьсо́тъ	„ „	се́мисо́тый
800	восемьсо́тъ	„ „	восе́мисо́тый
900	девятъсо́тъ	„ „	девя́тисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	Noun	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ́ ты́сячи	Adj. & noun	двухты́сячный
3,000	три ты́сячи	„ „	трѣхты́сячный
4,000	четы́ре ты́сячи and so on	„ „	четы́рех- ты́сячный
60,000	шестьдеся́тъ ты́сячь	Three nouns	ше́стидеся́ти- ты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячь	Nouns	сто- or ста- ты́сячный
1,000,000	милліо́нь	Noun	милліо́нный

сто is declined as follows:—

<i>Singular.</i>	Nom.	сто
	Voc.	сто
	Acc.	сто
	Gen.	ста, etc.

Similarly *девяно́сто* (90). But when *сто* is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly *ста* (the genitive); and similarly *девяно́сто*.

<i>Plural.</i>	Nom.	ста
	Voc.	ста
	Acc.	ста
	Gen.	сотъ
	Dat.	стамъ
	Instr.	ста́ми
	Loc.	стахъ

*All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.*

e.g. двѣ́сти, двухсо́тъ, двумста́мъ, двумяста́ми,  
двухста́хъ, etc.

ты́сяча is a regular feminine noun; but the instrumental singular is sometimes ты́сячью, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, со́рокъ, девяно́сто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc.	сто со́рокъ листьо́въ	140 leaves (of paper)
Gen.	ста со́рокá листьо́въ	
Dat.	ста со́рокá листьа́мъ	
Instr.	ста со́рокá листьа́ми	
Loc.	ста со́рокá листьа́хъ	

IV. (1) *Frequency.* Examples of use:—

о́днѣ́ разъ once, or о́днѣ́жды  
 два́ ра́за twice, or два́жды  
 три́ ра́за thrice, or три́жды  
 четы́ре ра́за four times, etc., or четы́режды  
 пять́ разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по́ два, по́ три, по́ четы́ре; but with all other numbers in the dative: во́ пяти́, по́ сту́, по́ со́рокý, по́ девяно́сту (or по́ со́рокá).

(3) *Nought* is ну́ль (ну́ля), masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after о́днѣ́; gen. sing. after два́, три́,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двадцать одинъ фунтъ 21 pounds

тридцать три коня 33 horses

мѣньше двадцати пяти минутъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

путь цѣлыхъ девять десятихъ копѣйки съ версты.

·9 kop. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ одной до ста шестидесяти вёрствъ, по одной цѣлой, и четыре тысячи триста семьдесятъ пять десяти тысячныхъ копѣйки съ пассажира.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 kop. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals. Only the last numeral is declined.*

e.g. Двадцать девятого декабрѣ (мѣсяца) въ тысяча восемьсотъ девяносто седьмомъ годѣ.

On the 29th Dec. 1914. [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто девяносто седьмомъ годѣ до рождества Христова.

In 197 B.C.

Гостиница съ болѣе чѣмъ двумястами номерами.

A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣна комнатъ понижается лѣтомъ до пятидесяти процѣнтовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.



As a complete example, 2,367,134·8295 aršins (аршинъ a measure of length about a yard) would be thus declined :—

Nom. Два милліона, триста шестьдесятъ семь тысячъ, сто тридцать четыре цѣлыхъ, восемь тысячъ двѣсти девяносто пять десятитысячныхъ аршина.

Acc. As genitive or nominative; in this case as nominative.

Gen. Двухъ милліоновъ, трёхсотъ шестидесяти семи тысячъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ цѣлыхъ, восьми тысячъ двухсотъ девяноста пяти десятитысячныхъ аршина.\*

Dat. Двумъ милліонамъ трёмстамъ шестидесяти семи тысячамъ ста (огъ стю) тридцати четырёхъ цѣлымъ, восьми тысячамъ девяноста (огъ девяносту) пяти десятитысячнымъ аршина.

Instr. Двумя милліонами тремястами шестидесятью семью тысячами, ста тридцатью четырьмя цѣлыми, восемью тысячами девяноста (огъ девяностомъ) пятью десятитысячными аршина.

Loc. Двухъ милліонахъ трёхстахъ шестидесяти семи тысячахъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ цѣлыхъ, восьми тысячахъ девяноста (огъ девяностѣ) пяти десятитысячныхъ аршина.

(7) два, три, четыре, *in the nominative or accusative*, are followed by the noun in the genitive singular or by the nominative *or* genitive plural of adjectives.

---

\* Gen. sing., the decimal being expressed by  $\frac{8295}{10000}$  of an aršin. *The last numeral always governs the noun.*

This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that два, три, четы́ре in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. два вы́сокихъ (or -іе) солда́та two tall soldiers

Gen. двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тъ

Dat. двумъ вы́сокимъ солда́тамъ

Instr. двумя́ вы́сокими солда́тами

Loc. двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тахъ

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, дво́и, трои́; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. вора́та the gates четы́веро вора́тъ four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of дво́и, трои́, четы́веро.\*

дво́е and трое́ are declined like обо́а, but accent the terminations *и́хъ, и́мъ, и́ми*.

четы́веро and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. *пяте́рыхъ*, etc.

(8) *полови́на*, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. *полтора́*  $1\frac{1}{2}$  (for *полъ-втора́*; cf. German, *andert-halb*  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , *dritthalb*  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ); also in words like *полу́нта* half a pound, *полча́са* half an hour, *полго́да* half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

---

\* So, too, in Latin: *templum, tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	1½ aršins		1½ versts
c.g. N.V.A.	полторá аршіна		полторы́ версты
Gen.	полúтора аршинъ*		полúторы вёрсть
Dat.	{ полúтора } аршінамъ		полúторѣ верстáмъ
	{ полúтору }		
Instr.	{ полúтора } аршінами		полúторою верстáми
	{ полúторымъ }		
Loc.	{ полúтора } аршінахъ		полúторѣ верстáхъ
	{ полúторѣ }		

*Singular.**Plural.*

## Half-pound

N.V.A.	полуфúнта	полуфúнты
Gen.	полуфúпта	полуфúптовъ
Dat.	полуфúнту	полуфúнтамъ
Instr.	полуфúптомъ	полуфúптами
Loc.	полуфúптѣ	полуфúптахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полуфúнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

*Пóлдень* and *пóлночь*, "noon" and "midnight," are declined *полúдня*, *полúночи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полúтораста*, in all oblique cases.

---

\* v. § 24 (4).

Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. двѣ съ половиной бутылки two and a half bottles  
 тридцать пять и семнадцать тридцать восьмѣхъ  
 $35\frac{17}{8}$   
 четыре и три четверти  $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive года (годъ) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative въ годѣ is used.

In *dates* the plural of годъ is лѣта (лѣто summer).

e.g. двадцать пятаго декабря тысяча девятьсотъ  
 четвертаго года, 25th December 1904  
 въ тысяча восемьсотъ пятнадцатомъ годѣ  
 in 1815  
 шестьдесятъ лѣтъ тому назадъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations ; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. года черезъ три in about three years' time  
 послѣ трѣхъ лѣтъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in -скій, which form -ски; e.g. строго sternly, дорого dearly, раньше earlier, экономически economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.

## § 64. THE PREPOSITIONS.

These are very commonly used in Russian, and are dealt with in §§ 70–80 in the Syntax.

## § 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions are best acquired in the course of reading. As the Russian verb possesses no moods, and as there is no inversion of sentences, the conjunctions present no difficulty. Some few may be noticed here.

и “and.”

да “yes,” is also used for “and,” but has a corroborative strengthening significance, and belongs to the older language.

и also is used in a sentence to mean “also.”

а “but” or “and,” when used in contradistinction rather than conjunction.

но “but” in contradistinction, or denial.

ещё “also.”

или “or.” или—или, “either . . . or.”

ни—ни “neither—nor.” As will be seen in § 85, these require a double negative, i.e. a negated verb as well.

## § 66. THE INTERJECTIONS.

These are best learnt from reading. Russian being a phonetic language, these primitive sounds are written as pronounced, not conventionally as in English; e.g. “hush” for “sh,” “ough!” for pain.

e.g. in Russian ухъ! охъ! ахъ! etc.

Other interjections are developments from recognised words, e.g. “Lo” (from “look”).

So, too, in Russian увы! woe!

## SYNTAX.

## § 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, *Его Императорское\* Величество соизволилъ*; the verb is in the masculine, though *Величество* is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child *дитя* (neuter), *лицо* person (neuter) may be followed by *онъ, она́*, according to sense. Or again, *дѣсять* is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general* impersonal sense) is *осталося дѣсять*. [v. § 62, I.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede, unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

---

\* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehrverbindungen" Railway - foreign - traffic - connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. желѣзная дорога the railway, военные запасы war supplies, на полицѣйскомъ хранѣніи in police keeping.

### § 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless тотъ is occasionally used for the definite article, and одинъ for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales:—

Жилъ-былъ одинъ бѣдный вдовецъ.

There once lived a poor widower.

Тотъ самый торговецъ, который продалъ мнѣ, велосипедъ, совѣтуетъ мнѣ теперь купить мотоциклъ.

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

### § 69. THE CASES.

I. *The Nominative*.—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few *strictly ecclesiastical* phrases.

e.g. Бóже	from Богъ	God
Гóсподи	from Госпóдь	Lord
Óтче	from Отéць	Father
Христé	from Христóсь	Christ
Кня́же	from. Князь	Prince
Иисýсе	from Исýсь	Jesus
Сýне	from Сынъ	the Son
Царю́	from Царь	Tsar
Влады́ко	from Влады́ка	Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) *Ивáнь пострóилъ домъ.*

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" \*). In every case the nominative form is used.

e.g. Принеси́ сюда́ я́блоки.	
Bring the apples here	[ты familiar pronoun].
Приведи́ за́втра твоего́ дру́га.	
Bring your friend to-morrow.	

\* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *á* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo *á* Juan" he brought John,



Я не видѣлъ чемодана.  
 I did not see the portmanteau.  
 Она не нашла лошади.  
 She did not find the horse.  
 Никогда не поймаешь рыбы.  
 You never catch a fish.  
 Я привёл двухъ лошадей.  
 I have brought two horses.

Besides this very limited use as the objective case, this accusative case, but never its genitive substitute, is found with the following meaning: to indicate duration in space or time.

e.g. Я ждалъ тебѣ всё утро, цѣлый день, всю ночь, всю недѣлю, полчаса.  
 I was waiting for you all the morning, the whole day, all the night, all the week, half an hour.  
 Я гулялъ три часа и прошёлъ шесть вёрстъ.  
 I walked for three hours and went six versts.  
 Я прошёлъ всё разстояніе между Варшавою и Краковомъ.  
 I went all the distance between Warsaw and Cracow.  
 Лётчикъ пролетѣлъ половину пути къ нашему помѣстью.  
 The airman flew half the way to our country house.

#### IV. *The Genitive.*

In modern Russian the genitive is used for a variety of purposes. The simple genitive indicates the relationship of possession between two substantives,

In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: (*a*) subjective, (*β*) objective, (*γ*) defining.

e.g. (*a*) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.  
(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

(*β*) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

(*γ*) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsar's odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de César."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar,"

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога слона раздавила череп тигра.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.

(Possessive genitive.)

Нога слона почти безъ волосъ.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.

(Generic genitive.)

Слоновая кость стоитъ дорого.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавайльакъ, убійца Генриха четвёртаго.

Cavaillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Иоанновы [наёмные] убійцы.

Iván (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins.

(Subjective.)

Пѣтъкинѣ дни тяну́лись однообразно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

День рождѣнія Госудáря.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госудáревы именíны.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Закáтъ со́лнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Со́лнечный закáтъ.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солдáтская свирѣ́пость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

*But* Свирѣ́пость солдатъ.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Входъ въ дворѣ́ць.\*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

*But* Дворцо́вые входы́ стрóго охраня́ются солдáтами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Доро́га (or шоссе́) къ Москвѣ́; отъ Москвѣ́.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

\* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles."

Москóвскія дорóги óчень хороші́.

The Moscow roads are very fine.

Морскóе дно состои́тъ изъ песка́.

The bottom of the sea consists of sand.

Дно мóря здѣсь глубокó.

The bottom of the sea is deep here.

Я жилъ въ отцóвскомъ дóмѣ.

I lived in my father's house (with my parents).

Я жилъ въ дóмѣ отцá.

I lived in my father's house (i.e. his, not mine  
or Mr. Smith's).

(2) *Objective genitives.*

These, too, may be general or particular, but the word in the genitive cannot be adjectivally expressed.

However, Russian avoids ambiguity by using the genitive or any other case with a suitable preposition, e.g. such as would be required by the verb corresponding to the governing noun.

e.g. Крестья́нская любóвь къ пѣстрымъ украше́нїямъ.

The peasant love of gaudy ornaments  
(general proposition).

Любóвь это́го мужчи́ны къ же́нщинамъ.

This man's love of woman (in particular).

Не́нависть къ Цѣ́зарю.

The hatred of Cæsar (felt against Cæsar).

(Contrast не́нависть Цѣ́заря the hate Cæsar  
felt.)

У него́ сильная́ любовь́ къ иску́ству.

He has a great love of art.

Убийство́ Эдуа́рда второ́го.

The murder of Edward II.

Наде́жды Пёти на повыше́ние.

Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Пётины in general.)

Разска́зчикъ́ этой́ сказа́нки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Сказочный́ ры́царь.

A fairy knight.

*In conclusion.*—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *его́*, *ея́*, *ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Моги́ла Вёры находи́лась въ глубинѣ́ кладби́ща.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

*But* подро́бности Вёриной́ сме́рти.

The details of Vera's death ("de la mort de Véra").

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in "y" with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in "y" is preferred to that in "a."

e.g. Ода́йте мнѣ ча́ю.

Give me some tea (*donnez-moi du thé*).

Два фунта са́хару.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два сорта ча́я.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection.

e.g. За́втра, мо́жетъ-бы́ть меня́ не бу́детъ здѣсь.

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;  
literally, "there will not be of me here."

Мнѣ не х́очется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его́ нѣтъ до́ма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. Цѣна́ э́тимъ лошада́мъ двѣсти рубле́й.

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнѣ ста́рый другъ.

He is an old friend of mine.

Such sentences are really instances of the *dativus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives [cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. Дѣдя мо́ложе своѣй племянницы.

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семна́дцать разъ бо́льше Фра́нціи.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated in § 69, III.

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and verbs denoting *fulness*, *worthiness*, *deprivation*, *fear*, *desire*, *expectancy*, and *value*.

e.g. Жизнь полна́ го́ря.

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ досто́инъ наказанія.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопро́съ каса́ется вы́шеизло́женныхъ пѹнкто́въ.

Your question touches points previously defined.

Я прошу́ ва́шего прощѣнія.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лиши́лся жи́зни.

He lost his life.

Лиши́лъ себѣ жи́зни.

Committed suicide.

Судъ лиши́лъ Петра́ Ива́новича всѣхъ правъ состо́янія.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all rights of position (civil rights).

Всѣ люди́ жела́ютъ здоро́вья.

Everybody desires health.



Я боюсь грома и молнии.  
I fear thunder and lightning.  
Это стоить денегъ.  
This costs money.

But if the price is stated, the accusative.

e.g. Бумага стоить три рубля пудъ.  
Paper costs three roubles a *pud*.  
Никогда не ожидалъ такого счастья.  
I never expected such luck.

(viii) To denote *dates on which*.

e.g. Третьяго дня Анна умерла.  
On the day before yesterday Ann died.  
Шестнадцатаго декабря.  
On the 16th December.

(ix) In all cases where the object of the verb is impliedly partitive, i.e. the word "some" might be added, or when in French the "partitive article" *du, des*, would be used.

e.g. Принесите вина. Bring some wine here.  
Apportez du vin.

So, too, after *all* words of quantity.

e.g. мало little, немного a little, довольно enough, etc.

(x) As in Latin to denote *descriptions*.

e.g. Онъ человекъ желѣзной настойчивости.  
He is a man of iron persistence (will).  
Пётръ Великій былъ высокаго роста.  
Peter the Great was a man of great height.  
Онъ былъ тогда шестидесяти лѣтъ.  
He was then sixty years old.  
(Or, ему было тогда шестьдесятъ лѣтъ.)

V. *The Dative.*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. **Мнѣ** полезно читать по-ру́сски.

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. **грози́ть кому́** threaten

**удивля́ться чему́** be surprised

**сме́яться чему́** to laugh at a thing (but

**сме́яться надъ кѣмъ** of a person)

**вѣри́ть кому́** or **чему́** believe (but **вѣрovať**

**въ Бóга** believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are:—

**жа́ловаться кому́ на кого́** to complain to A of B

**зави́довать кому́ въ чёмъ** to envy somebody something

**моли́ться кому́ за кого́** to pray to someone for someone

**кла́няться кому́** to greet (to bow down to)

**мсти́ть кому́ за что́** to take vengeance on somebody for something

**напоми́нать что́ кому́** to remind somebody of something

**учи́ть кого́ чему́** to teach somebody something

**учи́ться чему́** to learn something

But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. Чемú вы смѣетесь ?

What are you making merry of ?

Я вѣрю то́лько математическимъ доказа́тель-  
ствамъ.

I believe only mathematical proofs.

Я смѣюсь надъ ва́шимъ высокомѣ́риемъ.

I smile at your arrogance.

Отсѣль грози́ть мы бу́демъ Шве́ду.

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

Мы удивились егó скóрому возвраще́нию.

We were astonished at his swift return.

Я зави́дую ва́шему бога́тству.

I envy your wealth.

Я зави́дую Ротши́льду.

I envy Rothschild.

## VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. Царь былъ пома́занъ архиепíскопомъ.

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

Царь былъ пома́занъ мýромъ.

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. Дерéвья рýбятъ топорáми.

Trees are cleft with axes.

(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or *быть* in the past tense.

e.g. *Ивѣнъ былъ моимъ слугою.*  
John used to be my servant.  
*Онъ сдѣлался больнымъ.*  
He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: *онъ называлъ меня дуракомъ* he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . . ."

e.g. *Орёлъ летѣлъ стрѣлою.*  
The eagle flew like an arrow.  
*Онъ воображаетъ себя могучимъ государемъ.*  
He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. *Онъ продолжалъ идти мѣрнымъ шагомъ.*  
He continued to go at a regular pace.  
*Море здѣсь глубиною въ десять сажень.*  
The sea is here 10 sazens deep.  
*Температура большаго повѣсилась двумя градусами.*  
The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

*But* *Этотъ садъ на аршинъ шире твоего.*  
This garden is an aršin broader than yours.  
*Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слаще твоего.*  
My apple is twenty times sweeter than that  
. one,

(6) The instrumental is used with words of quality.

e.g. *Этотъ тюремщикъ добръ душою.*

This gaoler is kindly in soul (kind-hearted).

(7) The instrumental is used to denote *time in which* something happens; e.g. *зимою* in the winter, *весною* in the spring, *пóчью* at night, *ýтромъ* in the morning.

(8) Many verbs, especially those denoting *using, governing, naming*, are followed by the instrumental. These can only be acquired by practice.

Such are :	<i>пóльзоваться</i>	to use
	<i>называться</i>	to be called
	<i>владѣть</i>	to possess
	<i>гордиться</i>	to be proud of
	<i>жертвовать</i>	to sacrifice
	<i>править</i>	to rule
	<i>слыть</i>	to be reputed as
	<i>избираться</i>	to be elected

e.g. *Солдаты жертвуютъ жизнью за отчизну.*

Soldiers sacrifice their lives for their country.

*Я горжусь своими родителями.*

I boast of my parents.

*Его назначили (избрали) опекуномъ.*

They have appointed (chosen) him as guardian.

*Онъ не владѣетъ своимъ роднымъ языкомъ.*

He does not understand his own language.

## VII. *The Locative.*

In modern Russian this case is never used except with the prepositions *при, въ, о, на, по*. Hence it is often called the prepositional.

## § 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Object, * v. § 69, III.		Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.	Loc.	Verbal Prefixes.		
Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Simple.	Used with Nouns and Verbs.	With Verbs only.	
про	сквозь	безъ	близъ	къ	воореніи	надъ	при	въ	подъ	воз
черезъ		до	вдоль	около				до	предъ	вы
		изъ	вмѣсто	позади				за	при	пере
		изъ-за	внутри	подлѣ				изъ	про	пре
		изъ-подъ	внѣ	послѣ				на	съ	разъ
		отъ	вокругъ	ради				надъ	у	
		у	возлѣ	сверхъ				о		
			для	противъ				отъ		
			кромѣ	среди				по		
			кругомъ							

## Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

	за	подъ	предъ	Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.
	за			
		подъ		
			предъ	

## Governing Objective and Locative :—

					въ	
					на	
					о	

## Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

				по		

## Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

			съ			

## Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

			между			

\* I. e. accusative of inanimate objects; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -а, -я.

## § 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

*Preliminary.*

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English “by” and “beside.”

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *черезъ* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *пере-* again, *пре-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гóсти*, *въ пáньки*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation dissyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *гóродъ*, *бéрегъ* [v. § 5 (5)])



or dissyllabic nouns of the second declension often accent the preposition, especially in adverbial phrases.

e.g. на́ полъ on to the floor

на́ гору on to the mountain

In older Russian this rule was much more general.  
[v. § 80.]

## § 72. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Three prepositions govern only the accusative:  
черезъ (or чрезъ), про, сквозь.

про means "for," "concerning."

e.g. Всякъ про себя, а Господь про всехъ.

Each for himself, but the Lord for all.

Про когó говоришь?

Of whom are you speaking?

Combined with verbs it gives the idea of thoroughness.

e.g. Прочитáть to read through.

сквозь right through.

e.g. Гвоздь сквозь дóску прошёлъ.

The nail has gone right through (pierced) the board.

Онъ пройдётъ невредимымъ сквозь огонь и воду.  
He will pass through fire and water unscathed.

Смотрѣть на что сквозь пальпы.

To look through the fingers (i.e. overlook).

Онъ прошёлъ сквозь огонь и воду и мѣдныя трубы.

He passed through fire, water, and brazen tubes [proverb: i.e. every danger] [or *чѣрезъ* . . .].

чѣрезъ through and across.

e.g. Чѣрезъ рѣкѹ across the river.

Чѣрезъ стеклѡ видно.

One can see [видно it is visible] through the pane.

Чѣрезъ него многіе пострадали.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у него буду чѣрезъ недѣлю.

I shall be with him in one week.

### § 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

*These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.*

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ денегъ without money.

Безъ надежды without hope.

близъ\* near.

e.g. Близъ города near the town.

Близъ моего мужа стояла Настасья.

Nastasya was standing near my husband.

вдоль along.

e.g. Вдоль улицы along the street.

вмѣсто† instead of.

e.g. Вмѣсто веселія горе было.

It was woe instead of joy.

внутри\* inside.

e.g. Внутри чемодана inside the portmanteau.

внѣ\* outside.

e.g. Внѣ Европы outside Europe.

\* Whence adjectives ближній, внутренній, внешній.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмѣстѣ together; e.g. вмѣстѣ съ тобою together with you.

вѳзлѳ beside.

e.g. Вѳзлѳ пѳчи beside the stove.

вокругѳ от кругѳ round.

e.g. Вокругѳ цѳркиви round the church.

для for the purpose of, or intended for.

e.g. Для лѳчѳнѳя for the purpose of being healed.

до defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. До старѳсти дѳжилѳ.

He lived up to old age.

Читѳй съ начѳла до концѳ.

Read from the beginning to the end.

Отѳ Лѳндѳна до Парѳжа.

From London to Paris.

До полѳдня.

Until mid-day *or* before mid-day.

До Рождествѳ Христѳва.

V. c., i. e. up to *or* before the birth of Christ.

До Царѳ Никѳлаѳя Никѳлаѳевичѳ.

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikolayevič.

Ихѳ бѳло до десятиѳ.

There were up to (*or* about) ten of them.

до in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing ;  
e.g. дочитѳть to read to the end.

изѳ from, out of.

e.g. Изѳ огнѳ out of the fire.

Изѳ дрѳжбы out of friendship.

изѳ is scarcely ever used in measurements of time  
(*v.* отѳ).

изъ-за from behind.

e.g. С<sup>о</sup>лнце вышло изъ-за лѣсу.

The sun rose out of the wood.

Изъ-за неѣ "Thanks to her . . ."

изъ-подъ from under.

e.g. Изъ-подъ меня взяли стулъ.

They took my chair from under me.

изъ in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes изо; e.g. изображать to depict.

Before soft vowels it retains the ъ; e.g. изъѣденный (молью) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded ис; e.g. истратить to squander.

крѳмъ besides.

e.g. Крѳмъ такихъ примѣровъ.

Besides such examples.

Крѳмъ лошадей онъ завѣлъ ещё автомобиль.

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

Крѳмъ тогѳ in addition to this.

The "gerundive" or undeclined participle, *исключая*, is used absolutely to mean "except, excepting"; e.g. *исключая* (or за *исключениемъ*) *англичанъ* никакѳй народъ не свободенъ excepting the English no nation is free.

мимо past an object.

e.g. Орѣлъ летѣлъ мимо моего сада.

The eagle flew past my garden.

о́коло about.

e.g. О́коло двора́ about the courtyard.

О́коло пяти́ часо́въ about five o'clock.

вокру́гъ signifies rather "encircling" all the way round.

e.g. Вокру́гъ моего́ дома́ фрукто́вый садъ.

There is an orchard all round my house.

отъ away from.

e.g. Отъ княже́нія Влади́мирова.

From the time of Vladímir's reign.

Я получи́лъ подаро́къ отъ ма́тери.

I received a present from my mother.

Я покрасне́лъ отъ стыда́.

I blushed for shame.

отъ, as distinguished from изъ, indicates the source whence, rather than motion whence.

e.g. Доро́га отъ Москвы́ до Петрограда́.

The road from Moscow to Petrograd.

*But* Онъ при́халъ изъ Москвы́.

He arrived from Moscow.

отъ corresponds more with the Latin *ab*; изъ with *ex*.

When compounded with verbs, отъ, like изъ, retains its meaning, and changes to ото, отъ.

e.g. Оторва́ться to tear oneself free.

Отъ́хать to drive away.

Отъ́здъ departure.

пóдлѣ means the same as во́злѣ.

позади́ behind.

e.g. Позади́ дере́вни behind the village.

послѣ after (in time or order).

- e.g. Послѣ ухода отъ должности.  
After retirement from service.  
Послѣ королѣи вошелъ его слуга.  
After the king his servant entered.

протѣивъ against or opposite to.

- e.g. Протѣивъ дворца стоить соборъ.  
Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.  
Россія борется протѣивъ Нѣмцевъ.  
Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ради for the sake of.

- e.g. Ради твоѣи матери.  
For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

- e.g. Сверхъ разума beyond reason.  
Сверхъ жалованья онъ получаетъ награду.  
In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.  
Сверхъ того furthermore.

средѣи or посредѣи in the middle of.

- e.g. Посредѣи острова in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

- e.g. У дѣла at work.  
У ногъ у королѣи at one's feet.

y with the verb *есть* replaces the verb "to have."

e.g. У менѣ *есть* хлѣбъ. [v. § 87.]

I have a loaf.

У себѣ ли бѣринь ?

Is your master in his room ? [v. § 84.]

y with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. У Петровыхъ *всегда* хорошій обѣдъ.

They always dine well at the Petróvs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

## § 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. Къ вѣчеру toward evening.

Otherwise къ merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative "to" or "for."

e.g. Къ бѣрегу to the bank.

Пришлю книгу къ нему.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant к is merely sounded in front, like l' and d' in French: "l'âme," "d'autres." Before dentals and gutturals къ is softened to х in pronunciation; e.g. къ тому is sounded хтому; къ дому, хдому.

Before heavy initial consonants **къ** is sounded, and is sometimes written, **ко**.

e.g. **Ко двору́** to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to **въ** and **съ**, which may be written and sounded **во** and **со**.

**Вопреки́** in spite of.

**Вопреки́ егó старáнiямъ** despite his endeavours.

#### § 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

**надъ** means "above," "over."

e.g. **Надъ землёю** over the earth.

**Братъ верхъ вáдъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ)** to overcome someone.

**Бóжья во́ля надо мно́ю.**

God's will over me.

**Бѣда́ висíтъ надъ егó головóй.**

Adversity hangs over his head.

**между** may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means "between."

e.g. **Сидѣть между́ двухъ сту́льевъ — положéние нейтрáльныхъ держáвъ.**

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]—  
[is] the situation of neutral States.

**Между́ двумя́ дере́вьями б́ыло окнó.**

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, "among."



## § 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE LOCATIVE.

One preposition, *при*, governs the locative and no other case. *при* originally meant "at."

e.g. *При до́мѣ* near, by the house.

*При ко́мѣ* in the presence of.

*При свидѣ́теляхъ* before witnesses.

*При Никола́ѣ Алекса́ндровичѣ.*

In the reign (*or* time) of Nicholas Aleksán-drovič.

*Онъ при заво́дѣ.*

He works in the factory.

*Онъ былъ адъютантомъ при Ско́белевѣ.*

He was adjutant to Skóbolev.

Also causal—

e.g. *При бога́тствѣ* возно́симся.

In prosperity we become proud.

The meaning of *при*, when compounded with verbs, is best learnt by practice; no rule can be conveniently stated.

§ 76. *подъ*, *предъ*, and *за*.

These govern the accusative and instrumental; the former when motion is implied, the latter when a state of rest is implied (cf. *in* in Latin or German).

I. *за* primarily means "behind," also "beyond."

With the accusative:—

e.g. *Ѣхать за гра́ницу.*

To travel beyond the frontier, i.e. abroad.

*Мнѣ да́вно за́ сорокъ лѣтъ.*

I am long past forty years old.

За́ десять лѣтъ своѣй слѹжбы приобрѣ́лъ большѹю  
о́пытность.

In ten years' service he gained great experi-  
ence.

Notice also :—

Мы садѣ́лись за сто́лъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of "holding," "grasping."

e.g. Егó взяли за́ руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня́ держа́ли за плéчи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means "what a . . . !"

e.g. Что́ за шумъ! what a noise!

Also "for the sake of."

e.g. Му́ченики ўмерли за́ истину.

The martyrs died for truth.

Моли́сь за отца́.

Pray for your father.

And "in price."

e.g. Прода́лъ кни́гу за четы́ре рубля́.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental :—

e.g. Это́тъ господи́нь живётъ за границею.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За са́домъ behind the garden.

Я сидѣ́лъ за сто́ломъ.

I sat at the table,

Or “giving the reason.”

e.g. За неприѣздомъ отца мы отложили нашу поѣзду.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our journey.

Зачѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of “fetching.”

e.g. Меня послали за сахаромъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. заснуть go to sleep, заплатить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses “at the back of,” “behind”; e.g. загородный suburban (also пригородъ suburb).

II. подъ properly means “under”; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бросилъ его подъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежитъ подъ пѣчью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Это случилось подъ вечеръ.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespere*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. Подъ этими условіями не могу подписаться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or передъ means “before” (of place, and of time).

The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я явился предъ судей.

I appeared before the judge.

Передъ воротами стоятъ два столба́.

In front of the gates there stand two columns.

Предъ закономъ всѣ равны́.

All are equal before the law.

*Observe* the adverbs *впереді* in front, *впередъ* forward, *напереді* beforehand.

*подъ* and *предъ*, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g. поднима́ть	подня́ть	raise
подпира́ть	подперёть	prop up
представя́ть	предста́ть	stand before
представля́ть	предста́вить	to present

Like *отъ*, *подъ* and *предъ* keep the *ь* before soft vowels, and *предъ* changes to *преду* before heavy consonants.

e.g. Предъяви́ть to present.

Предусмотрѣ́ть to foresee.

Подъѣда́ть to nibble (eat from below).

Предусмотрѣ́ть всѣ мелочи́.

To foresee all details.

Предъяви́ть ве́ксель (отъ счёта) къ взыска́нію.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ подѣ́халъ на ко́пѣ.

He came by on horseback.

§ 77. THE PREPOSITIONS **въ**, **о**, AND **на**.

These govern the accusative and locative ; the accusative as usual relating to motion, the locative to a state of rest.

I. **въ** primarily means "in." It is sounded as a part of the following word, like **къ** and **съ**, and similarly may, if the following word have heavy initial consonants, be altered to **во**.

**въ** with the *accusative* is primarily "into."

e.g. (1) **Ивѣнъ вошѣлъ въ кѡмнату.**

John went into the room.

**Я ѳздила въ Оренбуръгъ.**

I travelled to Orenbúrg (feminine).

(2) It is used in statements of time.

e.g. **Во врѣмя путешѣствія я скучѣлъ.**

I was bored during the journey.

**Въ пять лѣтъ окончú мой трудъ.**

In five years I shall finish my work.

**Въ понедѣльникъ** on Monday.

(Distinguish **по понедѣльникамъ** every Monday.)

**Въ девѣть часѡвъ** at nine o'clock.

**Три рѣза въ день** three times a day.

(Distinguish **въ девѣтомъ часу** in the ninth hour ;  
i.e. between eight and nine.)

(3) And in statements of price, measure, etc.

e.g. **Дорога въ восемѣдцать вѣрстъ.**

A road eighteen versts long.

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz. :—

Меня звали въ гости.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ пошёлъ въ офицеры.

He has become an officer.

Постригусь въ монахи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

*In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI.].*

(5) Similarly :—

Сынъ въ отца.

The son is like his father.

въ with the *locative* means (1) “in.”

e.g. Бáринь въ столóвой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) “in,” in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентябрь мѣсяцѣ in September.

Въ ты́сяча девятьсо́тъ пятна́дцатомъ годѹ in 1915.\*

(3) “in,” in measurements of distance.

e.g. Мой дáча отсю́да въ трёхъ верста́хъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Ка́яться въ грѣ́хáхъ to repent one's sins.

Признава́ться въ оши́бкѣ to confess a mistake.

Обвиня́ть ко́го въ уби́ствѣ to convict of murder.

---

\* In these phrases годѹ cannot be omitted, and no other locative form is admissible.

In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входи́тъ** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **во́всѣ** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Вѣ́хать** (*vyékhăt'*) to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

*With the accusative.*

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́лъ на пло́щадь.**

I went on to the square.

**Паль тумáвъ на сыру́ю зéмлю.**

A mist fell on the damp earth.

**Я положи́лся на тебѣ́.**

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

**На четвёртый день** on the fourth day.

**Отпущу́ тебѣ́ на три часа́.**

I will let you go for three hours (до трёхъ часá until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

**Кúшайте на здорóвье.**

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

**Я слѣ́довалъ ему́ на злó.\***

I followed him to spite him.

---

\* От нá злю.

- (4) "Against," "in respect of."

Я сердился на Григорія.

I was angry with Gregory.

Не жалуйся на твоего брата.

Do not make complaints with respect to  
(against) your brother.*With the locative.*

- e.g. (1) Ваша книга на столѣ.

Your book is on the table.

- (2) In words denoting time.

На Рождествѣ.

On Christmas day.

- (3) In words indicating the points of the
- 
- compass.

На сѣверѣ in the North.

- (a) Мой братъ женился на французкѣ,
- 
- племянница которой выйдетъ замужъ за
- 
- русскаго подданнаго.

My brother has married a Frenchwoman  
whose niece is going to marry a Russian  
subject.

- (3) Играли въ карты.

They were playing cards.

Играли въ шахматы.

They were playing chess (i.e. a game).

*But* Играли на скрипкѣ.They were playing the violin (the musical  
*instrument*).



(γ) *Observe* на Русіи or въ Россіи in Russia.

(Русь is a poetical form.)

In composition на has no meaning limited enough to be stated in these pages.

III. The preposition о (объ before vowels, обо before very heavy initial consonants) primarily means "on" or "against."

*With the accusative.*

- (1) Онъ удáрился о кáмень he hit against a stone.
- (2) Объ́ эту́ по́ру at this time.

*With the locative.*

- (1) Concerning, about.

e.g. Мы говорíли о твоёмъ несча́стíи.

We were speaking of your misfortune.

- (2) Of time (when the time is not exactly stated).

e.g. О Пáсхѣ at Easter.

(3) With numerals, when the objects enumerated are constituents of something else, and not accidental.

e.g. Стуль о трѣхъ нóжкахъ a chair with three feet.

(But Стѣна́ въ три аршіна a wall 3 aršins high.)

In composition о indicates the completion of the act, and some generality.

e.g. Обойтí to go round (and survey).

Огляну́ться to glance round.

Before heavy consonants it can take the full form обо; e.g. ободра́ть, обдира́ть to flay.

Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded *объ*.

e.g. *Объяснить* to explain.

*Объятие, объёмъ*, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with *п, ь + п* are fused into *ы*; e.g. *обыграть* to beat at play, cf. *сыграть* from *съ + играть* to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition *объ* is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally *обо* before words with heavy initial consonants.

### § 78. THE PREPOSITIONS *по* AND *съ*.

I. *по*, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. *По край світа* to the edge of the world.

*Обважі руку по-локоть.*

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

*Мы пробудемъ здѣсь по Пасху.*

We shall stay here till Easter.

*По сіе время я ничегó не слыхалъ.*

Up to now I have heard nothing.

*По вѣкъ свой (или по смѣртъ) не забуду.*

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

*Я шёлъ въ лѣсъ по малину.*

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

*Мы пошли по воду.*

We went for water.

*Distributively, по два, по три, по четыре* [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

*Notice*—по тѣ стороны, по правую (руку), по лѣвую, that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in which something happens.

e.g. (1) По горáмъ over the hills.

По гóроду through the town.

Плыть по́ морю to sail the seas.

Эта трава́ растётъ по овра́гамъ.

This herb grows in the ravines.

(2) Distributively—

По утра́мъ every morning.

По пяти́ in fives (and with every number, except два, три, четы́ре). [v. § 62, IV.(2).]

По ночáмъ every night.

По средáмъ every Wednesday.

(3) “According to.”

По-мо́ему\* in my opinion.

По ста́рому in the old-fashioned way.

По чи́ну according to rank.

Почему́? why?

Потому́ что because.

по with the locative.

(1) With words of time, means “after.”

e.g. Потóмъ thereupon.†

По рождествѣ́ after Christmas.

По Петрѣ́ Вели́комъ after Peter the Great.

\* In this single phrase моему́ is accented мо́ему. So, too, по тво́ему, своему́. Thus:—

По моему́ процессу́ вы́шло по-мо́ему.

My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потомки́, потомство́ descendants.

(2) “On account of.”

e.g. Женá по мýжѣ назывáется.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По кóмъ вы въ тра́урѣ?

For whom are you in mourning?

по in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. поглядывáть to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. побítь to smite down, послáть to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Рублѣй съ пятóкъ издержáль.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ я про́жилъ съ мѣсяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ рóстомъ съ отцá (or въ отцá).

He is about as tall as his father.

Вёрстъ со сто́ (съ сотню) б́удетъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning “down from.”

e.g. Онъ сошѣлъ съ плáтформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather “away from,” in space: e.g. по́ѣздъ ушѣлъ изъ Москв́ы the train left Moscow.)

Онá сошла́ съ умá.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ тѣхъ поръ from that time.

Жду со дн́я вá день.

I am waiting from day to day

It may also have a causal meaning, like *отъ*.

e.g. *Съ тоскѣи* from melancholy.

*съ* with the instrumental has an entirely different meaning, i.e. "with," "accompanying."

e.g. *Я приду съ супругою (супругой)*.

I will arrive with my wife.

*Онъ дѣлалъ это съ радостью.*

He was doing this with pleasure.

*Онъ человекъ съ умомъ.*

He is a man with sense.

*Совсѣмъ* quite.

*Кто говорилъ съ Кузьмой?*

Who was speaking to Kuz'má?

In composition *съ* can have either the meaning "from" or "with," e.g. *снимать* to take off, *сѣхать* to travel away; or *соединять* to unite, *сочинять* to compose, *сдѣлать* to finish doing.

Before soft vowels *съ* is retained entire, e.g. *сѣдѣть* to devour; or, before *н*, amalgamates, e.g. *сыскать* to find after search (*съ-искать*); or remains as *со*, e.g. *соединять*.

### § 79. THE VERBAL PREFIXES *воз*, *вы*, *пере*, *пре*, *разъ*.

*воз* adds the sense of "up" to a verb.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *вос*, e.g. *воспитать* to educate.

Before verbs beginning with *е* + a consonant it is, however, written *воз* and sounded *вос*, e.g. *возстание*—insurrection.

In Old Slavonic the form was **възъ**, hence in modern Russian **въ** and **въо** are also met with.

e.g. **вълетѣть** to fly up  
**въдуть цѣны** to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. **въдрать**, but **въодрать** to tear up  
**възирать** (for **възирать**), but **възрѣть** to look up  
 (Cf. **сжечь**,\* but **сожгý** to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the **з** is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. **възѣзж́ать** to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, **ъ + н** after is fused into **ы**.

e.g. **возъ + имѣть** becomes **возымѣть** to conceive  
 (doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly **раз-**, **разь-**, **разы-**, **разо-**, **рас-**.

**вы** probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. **выболѣть** to become utterly ill  
**выбѣжать** (perfective) **выбѣгать** (imperfective)  
 to run out [v. § 59, IV.]  
**выгнать** drive out, **выгонѣть** (imperfective)

**вы** always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

---

\* Sounded *žžeč*.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to obtain by asking, **выпра́шивать**  
**вы́гадать** to profit, **выга́дывать**

**пере** implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider  
**переби́ть** to kill many, to massacre  
**перебыва́ть** to be in many places  
**передопроси́ть** to re-examine  
**перела́мывать** to break to pieces  
**переписа́ть** to copy  
**пересма́тривать** to review, survey; **пересмо́тр**  
revision

**пре** implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предь**; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбе́зный** very kindly  
**превыша́ть** to surpass  
**презира́ть** to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пере**.

e.g. **превраща́ть, преврати́ть** to transform

**разъ** has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **растека́ть** to flow (in various directions)  
**растапа́вливать** to station people apart  
**разы́гривать** to play out to the end  
**разы́езд** a departure (of many people in  
different directions)  
**разува́ть** to take off one's shoes  
**разсе́ивать** to sow (scatter seed)  
**разсма́тривать** to survey all round

§ 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. "in-the-wood," "on-the-table," "въ лѣсу́," "на столѣ́." But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. на́ бокъ on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix вы [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52, (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g. прожѣть	про́житый	to live through
начѣть	на́чалъ*	to begin
избра́ть	и́збранъ	to select
нави́ть	на́вняль and на́нятъ	to hire †
назва́ть	на́званъ	called
пода́ть	по́дашь	serve (at a meal)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

\* But past part. pass. на́чатый.

† So, too, *all* dissyllabic compounds of -ять,



survives. It will be observed the words are nearly all monosyllables, or dissyllables with liquids, such as бѣрегъ shore [v. § 5 (5)], or dissyllabic feminines, and that the usage is practically confined to the accusative.

Verbs that accent the preposition are also monosyllabic.

The forms accenting the particle are mostly used in set phrases, like adverbs.

- e.g. на бокъ (or на бѣкъ) to one side  
 на берегъ (or на бѣрегъ) to the shore  
 на голо (of weapons) naked  
 на голову (or на гѣлову) on to the head  
 на душу (or на дѣшу) into the mind  
 на землю (or на зѣмлю) on to the earth  
 на зло (or на злѣ) in despite  
 на полъ on to the floor  
 на поле (or на пѣле) on to the field  
 на ночь for a night  
 на смѣхъ (to hold up) to ridicule  
 начисто (to wipe) clean

So, too, in verbs.

- e.g. нанялъ I hired  
 занялъ (зѣнять) busied  
 преданный devoted  
 проданный betrayed or sold  
 избранъ selected  
 названный called

Similarly with the *negative* не: не далъ,  
 не бралъ, не было, не былъ.

- перелилъ (or перелѣлъ) overflowed  
 отдалъ (óddal) he has given away  
 прожилъ he has lived through

Other instances are :—

по́ лугу (по лу́гу) over the meadow  
 по́ морю (по мо́рю) over the sea  
 по́ берегу (по бе́регу) along the bank  
 во́все at all  
 изъ лѣсу out of the wood  
 о́ землю (о зе́млю) against the ground  
 за́ ногу by the leg  
 у́ моря (у мо́ря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

### § 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

#### I. *The date* (число́), *days* (дни), etc.

The days of the week (недѣля) are :—

Понеде́льникъ	Monday (Недѣля, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Вторникъ	Tuesday
Среда́	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четве́ргъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пя́тница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббо́та	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскресе́нье	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Недѣля	the week

---

\* In ecclesiastical parlance, четвёрто́къ,

The months (мѣсяць) are :—

Январь	January	(января́, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(февралѣ́, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(марта́, etc.)
Апрѣль	April	(апрѣ́ля, etc.)
Май	May	(ма́я, etc.)
Юнь	June	(ію́ня, etc.)
Іюль	July	(ію́ля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(августа́, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентябрѣ́, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октябрѣ́, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(ноябрѣ́, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декабрѣ́, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

e.g. Которое (какое) число у насъ сегодня?  
What is the date to-day?

Шестнадцатое январѣ.  
The 16th of January.

Пятница двадцать пятаго (пятое) марта.  
Friday the 25th of March.

*Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.\**

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.

---

\* Nor for adjectives denoting nationality, e.g. русскіи, Russian ; французскіи, French.

e.g. Въ средѹ́ бѹдетъ три́дцать пѣрвое ма́рта ты́сяча  
восемьсо́тъ со́рокъ восьмо́го го́да.

Wednesday will be the 31st March 1848.

*But* Де́вятна́дцатаго февралѹ́ ты́сяча восемьсо́тъ  
шестьдеся́тъ пѣрваго го́да.

The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated :—

e.g. Средá (въ средѹ́) 31-ое ма́рта 1848 г.

19-го февралѹ́ 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules :—

Ско́лько Ива́ну лѣтъ?

How old is Iván ?

Како́й во́зраст А́нны Петро́вны?

How old is Anna Petrovna ?

Ей шестьдеся́тъ лѣтъ.

She is sixty years old.

Она́ родилась восьмо́го ма́я ты́сяча восемьсо́тъ  
со́рокъ второ́го го́да.

She was born on the 8th May 1842.

Ему́ идѣтъ два́дцать пѣрвый годъ.

He is in his twenty-first year.

Мнѣ́ три́дцать лѣтъ о́тъ роду.

I am thirty years old.

Ему́ бо́лѣе два́дцати́-восьми́ лѣтъ.

He is over twenty-eight.

Ему́ уже́ за́ со́рокъ лѣтъ.

He is over forty.

III. In forming compound nouns and adjectives in which the first element is a numeral, the rule is to use the genitive of the numeral, e.g. *двухъ-этажный* two-storeyed; *двугривенникъ\** twenty copecks; *трѣхголовый змѣй* a three-headed dragon; *четырёхсотый* the 400th; *двадцатилѣтній* twenty years old; *пятиугольникъ* pentagon, etc.; except *тысячелѣтне* millennium, and compounds with *сто*, such as *столѣтне* century.

IV. *The time of day.*

The Russian for hour is *часъ*; for a watch or clock *часы* (plural).

The following sentences give the rules:—

*Какойъ часъ?* What is the time?

*Какойъ теперъ часъ на вашихъ часахъ?*

What time is it by your watch?

*Сколько теперъ времени?* What is the time now?

*Сколько пробѣло?* What time was it that struck?

*Теперъ два часа.* It is now two o'clock.

*Сейчасъ† шесть часовъ.* It is now six o'clock.

*Сейчасъ не больше семи часовъ.*

It is not more than seven o'clock.

*Сейчасъ одна мину́та пятаго.*

It is one minute past four.

*Сейчасъ четверть пятаго.* It is a quarter past four.

*Сейчасъ половина пятаго.* It is half past four.

*Сейчасъ тридцать девять третьяго.*

It is 39 minutes past two.

*Сейчасъ три четверти третьяго.*

It is a quarter to three.

\* *дву* Old Russian for *двухъ*.

† Popular for *теперъ*.

Сейчасъ безъ четверти девять.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчасъ половина одѣнадцати.

It is half past ten.

Сейчасъ безъ десяти (мину́тъ) двѣнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ уѣхалъ въ со́рокъ девять послѣ четырёхъ.

He went away at 4.49.

### V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with полъ, полу, a half. Полъ as a regular noun signifies sex or half.\*

e.g. мужско́й полъ the male sex  
попола́мъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, the nominative and accusative has пол- with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix полу-.

e.g. полчасá half an hour, получáса, получáсу, etc.  
полверсты́ half a verst, полуверсты́, полуверсты́

Thus, too, полдень mid-day, полночь midnight; полудня, полуночи, etc.

After the preposition по, the locative of полдень is полудни (a relic of the time when день was a feminine like кость); e.g. два часа́ по полудни two p.m.

Thus, too, полтора́ [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

---

\* Distinguish полъ floor, and пола́ skirt,

It is most important to distinguish полднѣя, полнѣчи, half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бѣдрствовалъ полднѣя, полнѣчи, полчасá, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with полу-, for  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ , etc., viz. полтретьяго,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ , etc.; now три съ половиною фўнта.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says два съ половиной, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Послѣ полуминуты этой работы она устала.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word сўтки, сўтокъ, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including день day and ночь night.

(2) Where “half” is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with полу- invariable.

e.g. полуостровъ	a peninsula
полумѣсяць	a crescent moon
полутѣмъ	a half-volume
(but полтѣма, полутѣма	half of a volume)
полу-официальный	semi-official, etc.

VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the рубль (рубля) or цѣлковый, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows:—

90	соpеckс	девяносто копѣекъ	отъ	дѣвать	грѣвепъ
80	„	восемьдесятъ	„ „	восемь	„
70	„	сѣмьдесятъ	„ „	сѣмь	„
60	„	шестьдесѣтъ	„ „	шесть	„
50	„	пятъдесѣтъ	„ „	полтина	отъ полтинникъ
40	„	сѣрокъ	„ „	четыре	грѣвенника
30	„	тридцать	„ „	три	„
25	„	двѣдцать пять	„ „	четвертакъ	
20	„	двѣдцать	„ „	двугрѣвенный	
15	„	пятнадцать	„ „	пяти-алтынный	
10	„	дѣсѣтъ	„ „	грѣвенникъ	
5	„	пятъ	„ „	пятачѣкъ	
3	„	три копѣйки	„	алтыль*	
2	„	двѣ	„	грошь	
1	„	копѣйка			
$\frac{1}{2}$	„	полкопѣйка	„	дѣнежка	
$\frac{1}{4}$	„	чѣтверть копѣйки	„	полушка	

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides *однажды*, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table *единожды* is used instead of *однажды*, and *четырежды* is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented *пятью*, *шестью*, *восемью*, *девятью*, *одиннадцатью*, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

\* Obsolete.



(2) Before comparatives the forms used are вдво́е, втрое́, вче́тверо, впа́теро . . . вде́сятеро; and thenceforward въ о́диннадцать́ разъ, etc.

e.g. Москва́ по пространству́ въ два́дцать семь разъ  
 больше́ Серге́хова.

Moscow in extent is twenty-one times bigger  
 than Sérpukhov.

VIII. A note should be added that one cardinal has become obsolete, namely тѣма or тма 10,000 (except in some phrases, and as an expression for a multitude). There is a derivative, тѣмникъ a commander of 10,000, and тѣматѣмущій, "multitudinous."

#### IX. *Cards.*

The names of the suits and the cards (ка́рты, feminine) may be useful to the student.

The four suits (масть, feminine, third declension) are: hearts че́рви (черве́й, feminine, third declension); diamonds бу́бны (бу́бонъ, feminine); spades пи́ки (пикъ, feminine), and тре́фы (трефъ, feminine) clubs. Trumps are козы́рь (mas.); a game without trumps игра́ въ безкозы́ряхъ. A trick is взя́тка, взя́точка; игро́къ the player.

The cards in each suit are:—

ту́зь ace	шестьёрка six	валётъ knave
дво́йка deuce	семёрка seven	да́ма queen
тро́йка three	осьмёрка eight	ко́роль king
четве́рка four	девя́тка nine	
пяте́рка five	деся́тка ten	

e.g. ко́роль черве́й; пяте́рка бубе́нъ; тро́йка пикъ; девя́тка трефъ.

*Notice* the phrases: игра́ть, сы́грать (perfective) въ ка́рты; проигра́ть to lose; вы́играть to win (imperfectives прои́грывать, вы́игрывать).

## § 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, **кто** referring to persons, like “who”; **что** to inanimate objects and neuters like “what,” and **ко́торый** corresponding to “which.”

*Note*, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed; in Russian it follows. [v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. John's house. **До́мъ Ива́на.**

Thus: **Въ до́мъ ко́торо́го му́жика ты вошёлъ?**

Into which peasant's house did you go?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

**кто** is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to **то́тъ**, **всѣ́мъ**, **всѣ́мъ**.

e.g. **То́му, кто лжётъ, не вѣ́рятъ.**

A liar is not believed.

**Всѣ́, кто прѣ́были, изуми́лись.**

All who arrived were astounded.

**что** is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. **Всё, что ты сказа́лъ—дура́чество.**

All you have said is folly.

Otherwise, for nouns *ко́рый* is used; and, as always in Russian, the genitive follows and never precedes.

e.g. Опáсности, ко́рымъ я подвергáлся.

The dangers I have risked.

До́мъ, крýша ко́раго спесенá вѣтромъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

*како́й* may be substituted, where the sense allows; it means "such as."

*Observe.*—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance *что* in the nominative tends to replace *кто* and *ко́рый* for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. Э́то тотъ са́мый ни́щій, что приходи́лъ къ вамъ у́тромъ.

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

### III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds; first, *кто* and *что*, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek *τις, τι*, contrasted with *τίς, τί*), and next, compounded pronouns with *то, ни*, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. Всѣ что ни есть.\*

Anything whatsoever.

Ско́лько ни рабóтали.

However much they worked.

---

\* *ни* as compared with *не* is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μη*, e.g. *πᾶν ὅ, τι ἂν ᾖ* or *μη ᾖ* whatever it may [not] be.

Кѣмъ бы ты ни роди́лся, ты всётаки обяза́н пови́новаться зако́ну.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто́-нибу́дь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто́-нибу́дь пусть принесётъ мнѣ стака́нъ воды́.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(будь imperative of быть; v. § 57, II. and 41, V(.; пусть from пустить let.)

The distinction between *како́й-то...* and *како́й ни* is almost identical with the English "some" and "any": someone (but I don't know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

#### IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express "each other," "one another," there are two phrases: *другъ дру́га, одинъ друго́го*. *другъ дру́га* is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. Онѣ ненави́дѣли другъ дру́га.

They hated each other.

Онѣ спори́ли другъ съ дру́гомъ.

They (fem.) quarrelled with each other.

*другъ дру́жку* (from *дру́жка*, feminine) is popularly also in use.

But with regard to *things*, the usual phrase is *одинъ другóго*, both of which are declined in full.

e.g. *Вóлны сходи́лись и расходи́лись боря́сь одна́ съ друго́й.*

The waves met and parted, fighting one another.

V. *The Negative Pronouns* [v. § 85 and § 41, VII.].

In Russian, negatives are doubled, but do not cancel each other.\* There is no means of expressing in Russian "I did *not* see nobody."

e.g. *Никако́й не́ было́ причи́ны.*

There was no reason whatever.

All negative pronouns are resolved when governed by a preposition. [v. § 41, VII.]

e.g. *Ни къ како́му изъ вы́шеуказанныхъ примѣровъ это́ не подхо́дитъ.*

This does not comply with any of the previous examples.

The only apparent exception is when the second negative negates a different verb or a noun or adjective.

e.g. *Я не счита́ю его́ неучти́вымъ.*

I do not consider him impolite.

*Никто́ не мо́жетъ не́ узна́ть его́ милосе́рдя.*

No one can not-recognise (fail to recognise) his clemency.

---

\* E.g. in Greek *οὐδείς οὐκ ἀφίεται* no one has come, but *οὐκ ἔπαθεν οὐδέν* could mean, as in English, "he did not experience nothing, but..."

## § 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun **ты**; the politer form is **вы**. The Russian for "tutoyer," "dutzen," is **ты́кать**.

**вы** takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. **вы о́чень любе́зны** you are very kind (*unlike* the French "vous êtes très aimable")

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. **вы мой лу́чший другъ** you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking *of* their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. **До́ма-ли ба́ринь (и́ли ба́рышня)?**

Is your master (mistress, daughter of the house)  
at home?

**Онѝ ушли́.**

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. **Ле́въ Никола́евичъ Толсто́й,**

The "patronymic" ends in -овичъ (-евичъ) or -овъ (-евъ) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,\* and -овна (-евна) and -ова (-ева) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called *имя*, the patronymic *отчество*, the family name *фамілія*.

e.g. Какъ зовутъ васъ по имени, отчеству, фаміліи ?  
 Какъ ваше имя, (ваше) отчество, (ваша)  
 фамілія ?

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. При Николаѣ Александровичѣ.

In the reign of Nicholas II.

Вчера я встрѣтилъ Марью Алексѣвну.

Equivalent to "yesterday I met Mary," or  
 "yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . ."

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are *господи́нь* (plural *господá*), and *госпожа́*. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

*Господи́нь*, *госпожа́*, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be *Васі́лій Па́вловичъ Перепѣлкинъ*) as *Васі́лій*

---

\* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. *Ѳомá*, *Ѳомичъ*; *Кузьмá*, *Кузьмичъ*; *Сáвва*, *Сáввичъ*; *Пѣтръ* (*Петрá*), *Петрóвичъ*; *Алекса́ндръ* (*Алекса́ндра*), *Алекса́ндровичъ*. A few feminines are formed in -ична, e.g. *Ѳоминиш(ч)на*, *Сáввиш(ч)на*, *Кузьминиш(ч)на*; *Лукá*, *Лукиниш(ч)на*; *Никита́*, *Никитиш(ч)на*.

Пáвловичъ; but an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́пъ Перепѣлкинъ; and a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепѣлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as до́кторъ (as we say "colonel" or "lieutenant" or "doctor"), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господа́нъ до́кторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господа́нъ Ба́шкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Шлѣ́ Кузьми́чъ; and as close friends, Шлѣ́; but seldom Ба́шкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

## II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress and their daughter, respectively as ба́рнинъ, ба́рыня, ба́рышня.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters су́дарь, судáрыня (an abbreviation of госуда́рь, госуда́рыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English "sir" and "madam."

e.g. Слу́шаю-сь. I hear you, sir.

Да-сь. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-сь? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of су́дарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозѣ́инъ, хозѣ́йка.



III. At meetings the company is collectively addressed as *Мілостивыя госуда́рыни и мілостивые\* госуда́ри*, or more simply as *господа́*, equivalent to "Ladies and Gentlemen."

#### IV. *Titles.*

Majesty is *Велічество*. The monarch is called *госуда́рь* (*госуда́рыня*), and these words are written with a capital, unless the reference is historical to a deceased monarch.

e.g. *Его́ Импера́торское Велічество Госуда́рь Импера́торъ.*

*Ея́ Импера́торское Велічество Госуда́рыня Импера́трѣца.*

*Царь, царѣца*, are used in ordinary speech.

The Royal family has the title *Высѣчество*.

e.g. *Его́ Импера́торское Высѣчество Паса́дникъ Цесаре́вичъ Алексѣ́й Никола́евичъ.*

His Imperial Highness the heir *Tsesarévich Alexis.*

Otherwise the forms are *царе́вичъ, царе́вна*.

Grand Dukes (who belong to the Royal Family more distantly) are styled *Велікій Князь*.

e.g. *Его́ Импера́торское Высѣчество Велікій Князь Никола́й Никола́евичъ.*

*Ея́ Импера́торское Высѣчество Велікаа Княгі́ня Елиза́вета Никола́евна.*

The daughters of a *князь* are styled *княжѣна́*.

---

\* A rendering of the German "gnädige Herrschaften."

Dukes (князь) have the title сіятельство (brilliance).

e.g. Его Сіятельство Князь Пáвель Петрóвичь Долгору́кій.

Earls are also styled сіятельство.

e.g. Его (Ея) Сіятельство Графъ (Графиня) . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Его́ Высокпревосходíteльство (excellency), for a Дѣйстви́тельный Тайный Совѣтникъ (something like a Privy Councillor; also called Стáтскій Генерáль).

Его́ Превосходíteльство, for a Тайный Совѣтникъ.

Его́ Высокорóдіе, for a Статскій Совѣтникъ.

Его́ Высокблагорóдіе, for a Коллѣжскій Секретáрь, and for the lower ranks Его́ Благорóдіе.

In the army, ranks from a порúчикъ (lieutenant) to a штабсъ-капитáнь (captain) are styled Его́ Благорóдіе; from a капитáнь to полкóвникъ, Его́ Высокблагорóдіе from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant Его́ Превосходíteльство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Высокпреподóбіе, преподóбіе, высокопреосвященство, преосвященство, according to rank; the lower orders being called благословéніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господíнь, госпожа́, followed by the full name.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Его Превосходительство изво́лши прѣбы́ть.  
His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive).  
Ея́ Императорское Вели́чество говори́ла, что . . .  
Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

*Contrast*—"Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée." "Que désire-t-elle?" In Russian, что хо́тите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Его́ Высокопревосходительству Госпо́дну  
Мини́стру Нарóднаго Просвѣщенія (Путѣй  
сообщеній).  
To his Excellency the Minister of Public  
Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Его́ Высокопревосходительству Арка́дию Миха́й-  
ловичу Ра́зину.  
To his Excellency Arkádi Mikhailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative.

e.g. In a private letter, Его́ Превосходительству  
(or Высокопревосходительству) Никола́ю  
Семёновичу Пугачёву.

If official, Его́ Высокопревосходительству  
Госпо́дну Нача́льнику Никола́евской же-  
лѣзной доро́ги, Никола́ю Семёновичу  
Пугачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Niko-  
láevskaia railway. . . .

Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable:—

Егѡ Высокородію Николаю Петровичу господину Пивоварову.

Николаю Петровичу Пивоварову.

Or simply, Николаю Петровичу господину Пивоварову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Егѡ Сіятельству Князю Семёну Аркадіевичу  
Долгорѹкому,  
Мѣховая ѹлица,  
въ Москвѣ.

Letters addressed abroad are marked: за границу, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Милостивая Государыня, Госпожа Шахматова; when less stiff, Милостивая Марья Ефимовна; if friendly, Многоуважаемая Марья Ефимовна; if intimate, Дорогая or Любёзная Марья Ефимовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважаемая Марья Ефимовна, would in this case be "Dear Mrs. or Miss Šákhmatov."

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows:—

Съ совершеннымъ почтёніемъ.

Готѡвый къ услѹгамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Васілій Пивоваровъ,

## § 84. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

As in English, sentences beginning with interrogative pronouns and adverbs are interrogative in themselves.

e.g. *Когда прибѣдете?*  
When will you arrive?

Other interrogative sentences are distinguished by the enclitic particle *ли*, which is appended to the emphatic word of the sentence. The personal pronoun, or subject, may or may not follow the verb.

e.g. *Не смѣжете-ли вы завтра пригото́вить мои сапоги́?*  
Will you not be able to get my boots ready to-morrow?

*Скоро-ли прибѣдемъ къ бѣре́гу?*  
Shall we soon reach shore?

There is another interrogative adverb, *развѣ* (perhaps), which conveys an ironic sense.

e.g. *Развѣ ну́жно, что́бы насъ подслу́шивали?*  
Is it necessary they should overhear us?

## § 85. NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Russian has two particles of negation, *не* and *ни*. A third one, *нѣтъ*, is a contraction of *не е́тъ* there is not, and is used for "No" as a reply.

*ни* is used:—

(1) To express neither—nor—.

e.g. *Ни я ни мой отецъ не могли́ скрыть нашу трево́гу.*  
Neither I nor my father could conceal our anxiety.

*ни ни* always requires the verb negated with *не*.

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. *никакой*, also need a verb negated with *не*.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

*не* is used:—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. *Не трогай меня, когда я шью.*

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negated with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

*Твоё объяснение неразумно.*

*Этот вопросъ въ права.* This is a non-legal question. *Незаконный поступокъ* an illegal action. So, too, unlawful противъ закона.

*Неопредѣлённый* indefinite, undefined; *безпредѣльный* infinite.

*Observe* (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. *Я не встрѣчалъ никого* I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. Это было встрѣчено, какъ нѣчто такое, что должно было случиться, что не могло не случиться.

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) не, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.\*

The pronouns are кто, что, когда, куда, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2)).

In this usage не stands for нѣтъ there is not.

e.g. Нѣчего дѣлать.

There is nothing to do.

(but Я не дѣлалъ ничегó.

I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ не къ кому обратиться.

I have no one to turn to.

Ему не на чёмъ основывать свои надежды.

He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

*The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with никто, etc.*

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb "to be" must be inserted.

e.g. Нѣчего будетъ (было) дѣлать.

Lastly, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of не, as a separable negative, and нѣ the indefinite prefix; e.g. нѣкто somebody, нѣкоторый, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

---

\* This use of не, formerly нѣ, is probably derived from не е there is not; е in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of есть,

## § 86. THE VERB "TO BE."

In the present tense the verb "to be" is generally omitted. In any case the forms *есмь*, *еси*, *есмы*, *есте*, are obsolete, and *суть* is only rarely found; *есть*, when necessary, replacing all the persons and numbers.

e.g. Я здоро́въ I am well.

Ты негодя́й you are a scapegrace.

Онѣ вóры they are thieves.

Ба́рица (ба́рыни) нѣтъ до́ма master (the mistress) is not at home.

However, the "copula" in the present sometimes must be stated.

(1) *Есть* regularly stands for "there is," "there are."

e.g. *Есть на свѣтѣ худѣя люди.*

There are evil people in the world.

The negative of *есть* in this sense is *нѣтъ*. [v. § 85.]

(2) *Есть* and *суть* sometimes are used to assert existence.

e.g. Богъ *есть*: а́нгелы *суть*.

God *is*: the angels *are*.

But it is better to use the verb *существова́ть*.

e.g. *Всегда́ существу́етъ нѣскольбо пселюче́ній для всякаго пра́вила грамма́тики.*

There are always some exceptions to every rule of grammar,



## (3) In definitions.

e.g. Прямая́ лінія́ есть́ кратчайшее́ разстояніе́ между́ двумя́ то́чками.

A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.

Бо́лѣзни́ суть́ наказаніе́ чело́вѣку́ за́ перворо́дный грѣхъ.

Diseases are man's punishment for primeval sin.

But, in all such cases it is better to substitute the pronoun *это*.

e.g. Лі́нія — это́ . . .

Бо́лѣзни — это́ наказаніе́ . . .

(4) When the use of the copula is essential to clarity *быть* is generally replaced by some exacter verb, such as *сидѣть*, *находиться*, *лежать*, *стоять*, *состоять*.

e.g. Мой дѣ́дя нахо́дится въ пло́хомъ состо́яніи́ здоро́вія.  
My uncle is in poor health.

Москв́а сто́итъ на рѣ́кѣ́ то́го же названія́.

Moscow lies (is) on a river of the same name.

Лю́тость явля́ется́ лично́й о́собенно́стью нѣ́мцевъ.  
Cruelty is a congenital quality of the Germans.

Ко́шка спѣ́дитъ на сту́лѣ.

The cat is on the chair.

Соба́ка ле́житъ по́дъ сто́ломъ.

The dog is under the table.

Сту́лъ сто́итъ въ дѣ́тско́й.

The chair is in the nursery.

Онъ состо́итъ офице́ромъ въ а́рміи.

He is an officer on service.

The omission in Russian of the present of *быть* explains the form of the past tense. In older Russian the perfect ran *я есмь* (на)писахъ, -а, -о, ты сси (на)писахъ, -а, -о, etc.; later the copula vanished. Cf. in Polish *писаłem, pisałam, pisałem; pisałeś, pisałaś, pisałś, etc.; pisałśmu, pisałyśmy, etc.*

*In every other tense and mood* the verb *быть* is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.

e.g. Онъ былъ банкиромъ (present онъ банкиръ),  
а теперъ онъ торгуетъ селѣдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

Нашѣствіе Татаръ было несчастьемъ для Рूसи.

The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune  
to Russia.

Когда бываєте (будете) дома?

When are you at home as a rule?

When will you be at home?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word *вотъ* is used like the French *voici, voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. Вотъ ученикъ, который опоздалъ.

There is the boy who was late.

### § 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by *у меня есть, былъ*, etc.

e.g. У меня нѣтъ (не было) денегъ

and У меня [есть] (было отъ были) три грамматик  
русскаго языка.

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian  
language,

имѣть “to possess” or “own” is also used in this sense.

e.g. Съ кѣмъ имѣю честь говорить?

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, имѣть means “to own”; cf. имѹщество property.

e.g. У меня есть собственный домъ.

I have a house of my own.

But Имѣю собственный домъ.

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house belonging to me.

### § 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. Имъ не забыть своихъ дѣтей.

They shall not forget their children.

Такимъ образомъ никому не быть богаты.

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

Ну, хорошо, что ты пришёл ко мнѣ; а то не бываешь тебѣ живому.

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise you would not be alive.

*Observe* the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, *такимъ образомъ . . . богатымъ*.

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. To fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.

Летѣть на аэропланѣ—это большое удовольствіе.\*

\* *Observe* aviator is лѣтчикъ.

But the verbal noun in *-nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страда́ние — на́ше и́стинное испыта́ние.

By trying you will succeed.

Стара́ниемъ тебѣ уда́тся.

## § 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

### I. *The Gerundives.*

The two "gerundives," present and past, can only refer to the subject\* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя́ по у́лицѣ, я встрѣтилъ Ива́на Я́ковлева.

Whilst wandering along the street I met  
Iván Yákovlevic.

Читая́ А́нну Ка́ренину, я пла́кала.

On reading Ánne Karénina, I cried.

Заплати́въ свои́ долги́, я почувствовала́ себя́  
свободною́.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

### II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ ко́мнатѣ́ бы́ло ти́хо, то́лько шелестѣли  
переворáчиваемыя́ листы́.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of  
the book) rustled as they were turned over  
(present participle passive).

---

\* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.

Передъ его расширенными глазами проходили  
страшные образы, вызывавшіе жалость . . .

Before his *open* eyes terrifying images passed,  
*provoking* pity . . .

Въ тёмную ночь они летѣли куда-то на своихъ  
колючихъ крыльяхъ.

In the dark of night they flew somewhere on  
their *sharp-pointed* wings.

Всѣ это было проявленія одной загадочной  
силы, желающей погубить человѣка.

All of these were aspects of some one  
mysterious power *that wants* to ruin man-  
kind.

Я видѣлъ её сидящей на стулѣ.

I saw her *sitting* in a chair.

Онъ походилъ на человѣка, теряющаго послѣд-  
нюю надежду и оставившаго всё въ прош-  
ломъ.

He resembled a man *who was losing* his last  
hope, and *had left* everything behind in the  
past.

Каждый годъ русская желѣзодѣлательная  
промышленность уменьшаетъ количество  
возимыхъ изъ Германіи товаровъ.

Every year the Russian iron industry  
diminishes the quantity of goods imported  
from Germany.

It should also be observed that the present participle passive, especially when compounded with *he*, has a secondary meaning, corresponding to the Latin *-ibilis*.

e.g. **ВІДИМЫЙ** visible, **ДВІЖИМЫЙ** moveable  
**СГАРАЕМЫЙ** incendiary, **НЕЛЮБИМЫЙ** unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in -ость, etc.

**НЕОТЪЕМЛЕМОСТЬ** imprescriptibility

**НЕОТМЪНИМОСТЬ** irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. **НЕСРАВНЕМЫЙ** incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

## § 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

### I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as **КОГДА** when, **ПОКА** until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with **ЧТО**; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

**КОГДА** means “when” generally; **ПОКА** is followed by “не,” as in French.

e.g. **ПОКА** **НОВИКОВЪ** не уѣзжалъ изъ **МОСКВЫ**.

Until **Novikov** left **Moscow**, “jusqu’à ce que **Novikov** ne quittât **Moscou**.”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of **ТОТЪ**, **ТО**,

followed by *как* or *что*; e.g. между тѣмъ, какъ while, въ томъ, что in the fact of, послѣ того, какъ after, до того, какъ until, отъ того, что from which fact . . .

## II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally; e.g. потому что because, для того чтобы with the object of, кромѣ того что besides which, послѣ того какъ after (causal), прѣтивъ того, что against the fact that . . ., etc., very much like the German "wogegen," "indem," "nachdem," etc.

## III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by "if" is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *коли*.

When the past tense are used the particle *бы*\* may be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German "wenn . . ." "so." This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

---

\* *Бы* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense ("I would have," "should be," etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly я быхъ, ты онъ бы). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ былъ* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.

The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. **Если** васъ посѣщ<sup>у</sup>, то приведу мою сестру.  
If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

**Если-бъ** (or **если-бы**) случилась такая бѣда, то я  
увѣдомилъ-бы васъ объ этомъ.

If such a misfortune happened to me, I would  
acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are both unreal, **бы** is repeated in both.

e.g. **Если-бъ** я простудился, я не могъ **бы** окончить  
свою книгу.

If I had caught cold, I should not have been  
able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as stated in § 88.

e.g. **Если бы** мнѣ звать.

If I had known.

**Если** идти направо.

If we are to go to the right, . . . .

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced:—

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. **Разбогатѣю, заплач<sup>у</sup>; не разбогатѣю, не заплач<sup>у</sup>.**  
If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person  
[v. § 91].

e.g. **Знай я это раньше, я бы не написалъ.**

Had I known this sooner, I would not have  
written.



(3) By the infinitive [cf. § 88].

e.g. Знать бы мнѣ это раньше, я бы не осмѣлился говорить.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have dared speak.

*In all these cases бы marks unreality, an unfulfilled condition. Cf. § 93 on было.*

#### IV. Final clauses.

Final clauses relate either to purpose or effect.

(1) Purpose.

Where the subjects of the principal and the subordinate clause are the same, чтобы (sometimes дабы) is used with the infinitive.

e.g. Я путешествовалъ по Россіи чтобы учиться русскому языку.

I travelled about in Russia to learn Russian.  
[v. § 69, V.]

Where the subjects are different, чтобы (or дабы) generally with the past tense.

e.g. Я уѣду изъ Москвы чтобы ты осталась одна.

I will leave Moscow that you may be left alone.

(2) Effect—"so that," такъ что, with the present, past or future.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ такъ быстро что нельзя было попастьъ въ него.

The eagle flew so fast that there was no chance of hitting him.

Она такъ раздражительно, что я не стерплю.

She is so irritable that I shall not stand it.

V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказа́лъ, что онъ посѣтитъ своего двоюроднаго брата, если у него́ будетъ время" (future tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I have seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, *видѣлъ*. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказа́лъ что видѣлъ Царя́."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother  
(I am writing . . .).

Онъ сказа́лъ, что пише́тъ письмо́ къ матери, *or*  
что писа́лъ if he *said* "I *was* writing."

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present Russian can retain the present, changing the person, *or* may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Онѣ сказали что убьѣтъ Цѣзаря (сказали, убьѣмъ *or* убьѣмте Цѣзаря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle **ли** is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse?

When did your sister lose her money?

Is your sister ailing?

In Russian—

Онѣ спросилъ Петра, пойдѣтъ-ли его сестра въ няшки. [v. § 69, III.]

Онѣ спросилъ Петра, когда его сестра потеряла свой дѣньги.

Онѣ спросилъ Петра, не больна-ли его сестра.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense,

Similarly—

He said “could one believe a German.”

Онъ сказа́лъ, “ра́звѣ мо́жно вѣ́рить Нѣ́мцу.”

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *мо́ль* and *де́ска́тъ*, and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гря́шь*, *гритъ*, *гри́ли* (abbreviations of *говору́ю*, etc.), are used like the vulgar English, “’e sez,” to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *мо́ль*, *де́ска́тъ* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, “he said”; \* and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́тъ: я мо́ль иска́лъ, да знать мо́ль нѣ́ту.

He says, “I looked, but could not find out.”

Объ ита́льи́нской а́рміи отзы́вался съ презри́тельной улы́бкой, какъ о вели́чинѣ́ да́же серьё́знаго внима́нія не заслу́живающей; мы́-де еѣ хоро́шо зна́емъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention; “we know all about it.”

Вы ду́мали запуга́ть меня́, Васи́лій Ива́новичъ: во́тъ, деска́тъ, я его́ пугну́.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, “I will frighten him.”

---

\* These examples are partly taken from Boyer's *Manuel de la langue russe*.

In every case where these particles are used, the quotation or indirect narration is in the person and tense of the original; these words merely serve as spoken inverted commas.

### § 91. THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative conjugated in full comprises the following forms:—

e.g. [да играю]	[пусть играю]	let me play
играй		play
[да играет]	пусть играет	let him play
[да играем]	[пусть играем]	играем let us play
играйте		play
[да играют]	пусть играют	let them play

The forms with *да* express desire; those with *пусть* permission. The forms in square brackets are infrequent.

The original imperative has only two forms, *играй*, *играйте*, and in Old Russian *играй* was the correct form of both the 2nd and the 3rd person singular.

The form in *и, í, ï, ь* (e.g. *сõхни, держи, дѣлай, сядь*) is used for all numbers and persons in phrases which have no imperative meaning.

#### (1) Adverbially.

e.g. <i>пожалуйста</i>	please (ста suffix)
<i>пожалуй*</i>	I consent, so be it
<i>чай*</i> ( <i>чáять</i> expect)	so be it
<i>пусть</i> or <i>пускай</i>	so be it
<i>кажись</i>	apparently
<i>глядí</i>	apparently
<i>небось</i> (for <i>небóйся</i> do not fear)	apparently
<i>подí</i> (for <i>пойдí</i> from <i>пойдти</i> )	apparently
<i>почтí</i>	almost

---

\* Probably these are abbreviated forms of *пожалую, чаю*.

дай with the perfect future "if I only could."

e.g. Вотъ дай унесу́ мѣшо́къ огурцо́въ, прода́мъ.

If I can manage a sack of cucumbers, I will sell it.

дава́й with the infinitive.

e.g. Дава́й игра́ть. Let us play.

The answer may be дава́й! Let us! = Yes, please; willingly.

(2) As a preterite.\* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. Отку́да ни возьми́сь from out of the clouds.  
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ го́ря да съ то́скѣ . . . я возьми́ да всё ей  
разскажи́.

What with pity and grief I told her every-  
thing.

Чего́-жъ бы я въ до́мѣ не зналъ? Кажѣсь, всё  
знаю́.

What is there at home I do not know of? I  
think I know everything.

Поста́вила на столѣ напитки и заку́ски разны́е,  
и по́утру рапѣхонько бу́дить и дава́й рас-  
пра́шивать.

She set various foods and drinks on the  
table; wakes up in the morning, and began  
asking [literally "and let me ask!"].

So, too, глядь he looked up, — lo! хватъ he seized;  
дѣрни, e.g. дѣрни менѣ the idea occurred to me;  
угорáзди, e.g. угорáзди менѣ the idea occurred to me.

---

\* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, *пошёлъ*, is used as an imperative, equivalent to "get out." The explanation is that the older language had the full form *будь пошёлъ* (*будь* imperative of *быть*).

e.g. *Пошли вонъ, дурачки!*  
Out you go, you fools!

## § 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. *Въ будущемъ году буду заниматься химіей.*  
Next year I shall study chemistry.

*Завтра займусь музыкой.*  
To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

*Remember буду and стану can never be used with a perfective infinitive.*

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

*Лѣтомъ онъ ходилъ въ пальто* (imperfective).  
In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.  
(French "paletot"; indeclinable in Russian.)

*Онъ верѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.*  
He often went to his father's house.

(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)

Бродягу, который прохаживается около этого дома отъ десяти часовъ до полудня зовутъ Никитинымъ.

The vagabond who saunters round this house from 10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikítin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москвѣ he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзалъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective and definitive).

Я видѣлъ виды на своёмъ вѣкѣ!

I have seen wonderful things in my life! (imperfective; general).

Я увидѣлъ Анну на башнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (perfective).

Я увидѣлъ въ гостинницѣ одного знакомаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тамъ-же видѣлъ много иностранцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as *шептáть* or *выдирáть*. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III,



SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS  
ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

*Present.*

	To tear out.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выдира́ть	шепта́ть
Verbal noun :	выдира́ние	шепта́ние
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́я	шепча́
Part. decl. active :	выдира́ющіи	шепча́щіи
Part. passive :	выдира́емый	шепча́емый
Indicative :	выдира́ю, -ешь, -ютъ	шепча́ю, шепча́тъ
Imperative :	выдира́й	шепча́

*Imperfect.*

Indicative :	выдира́лъ	шепта́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́въ, -авши	шепта́въ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	выдира́вшіи	шепта́вшіи

*Imperfect iterative.*

Indicative :	Same as	шепта́ыва́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	шепта́ыва́въ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout.	шепта́ыва́вшіи

*Perfect active.*

	To tear out.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	вѣдрать	
Verbal noun :	вѣдраніе*	Same as
Part. indeclin. :	вѣдравъ, -авши	Aorist
Part. declinable :	вѣдравшій	throughout.
Indicative :	вѣдраль	
Imperative :	вѣдри	

*Perfect.*

Part. passive :	{ вѣдранный вѣдиранный }	шептаный
-----------------	-----------------------------	----------

*Aorist.*

Infinitive :	вѣдрнуть	шепнуть
Verbal noun :	вѣдрнугіе*	шепнугіе*
Part. indecl. :	вѣдрнувъ, -увши	шепнувъ, -увши
Part. declinable :	вѣдрнувшій	шепнувшій
Part. passive :	вѣдрнутый	шепнутый
Imperative :	вѣдри	шепни

*Future.*

Continuous :	бѣду вѣдрать	бѣду шептать
Iterative :	” ”	бѣду шептывать*
Perfective :	вѣдру, -ёшь, -ѹтъ	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	вѣдрну, -ешь, -утъ	шепну́, -ёшь, -ѹтъ

*Conditionals* can be formed from any *past* tense by adding the particle бы.

\* Seldom used.

## § 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle *бы* partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. *пусть, да, дай, давай* [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. *давно, было, бывало, стану, буду, будто, только, что*, is important.

(1) *давно* (*давний* in the past) or *уже* (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. *Онъ давно искалъ дочку.*

He had long been searching for his daughter (imperfective). [Il cherchait déjà long-temps.]

*Ты уже пригото́вилъ обѣдъ.*

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) *буду*, as has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) *стану* also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "je vais . . ."

e.g. *Стану складывать свои вещи въ чемоданъ.*

I am going to pack my things in the portmanteau.

(4) *бўдто* or *какъ бўдто* means "as though."

e.g. Онъ всталъ какъ бўдто чтобы уходить.

He got up as though he were going out.

Онъ улыбулся, какъ бўдто его братъ пошутилъ.

He smiled as though his brother had made a  
joke

(5) *только что* means "just."

e.g. Онъ только что похоронилъ своего отца.

He had just buried his father.

(6) *бывало* with the past tense adds a meaning of "he used to do," of a continuous practice.

e.g. Я, бывало, посѣщалъ эту семью.

I used to visit this family.

(7) *хотя* (or *хоть*) is used for "though"; in combination with *бы* and a past tense, *бъ* when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. Хотя ты былъ слабъ, но надо было постараться.

Though you were ill, you should have tried.

Хотя я бѣду въ Москвѣ, но мнѣ нельзя бѣдетъ  
повидать вашихъ родителей.

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be  
able to see your parents.

Хотя-бъ я былъ самымъ сильнымъ во всемъ  
свѣтѣ, бѣдныхъ я-бъ не угнеталъ.

Even if I were the most powerful man on  
earth, I would not oppress the poor.

(8) *было* with the imperfective or perfective past signifies that the action contemplated, in the clause into which *было* is inserted, was never completed: as something—in the following sentence—intervened.

e.g. Я дѣлалъ было приготова́енія, что́бы пригласи́ть васъ къ себѣ въ го́сти, когда́ меня́ вы́звали изъ Ло́ндона.

I was getting ready to ask you as my guest, but was summoned away from London.

Я дочита́лъ ва́ше сочи́неніе и было́ собира́лся пойти́ на по́чту, когда́ непри́ятеля сожгли́ мой до́мъ.

I had finished reading your composition, and had packed it up to post, but the enemy burned my house.

(9) The future perfect (I shall have . . .) cannot be expressed in Russian by any one corresponding tense.

e.g. Когда́ я бу́ду впло́нѣ удовле́воре́нъ, меня́ уже́ не бу́детъ въ живы́хъ.

When I shall have been satisfied completely, I shall no longer be alive.

Я побѣгу́ до́мой в бу́ду о́брáтно, пре́жде чѣмъ ты вста́нешь.

I shall have run home and back, before you even get up.

## § 94. THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

I. Many verbs are in themselves impersonal; e.g. *ка́жется* it seems, *ока́зывается* it transpires.\*

---

\* *Каза́ться* to seem, *оказа́ть* to render, *сказа́ть* tell, *приказа́ть* order, *разказа́ть* narrate, *указа́ть* indicate, *показа́ть* show, *отказа́ть* dismiss, refuse; all of them perfective, the imperfectives being *оказы́вать*, etc.

Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like "one," "man," "on"; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used, without a pronoun.

e.g. Говорѣтъ one says.

Чѣмъ болѣе стараешься, тѣмъ болѣе ошибаешься.  
The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочѹ I wish, or мнѣ хочется ; видѣть, мнѣ видѣлось, I saw ; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалося хорошо I slept soundly ; дѹмаю I think, мнѣ дѹмается I think ; жить to live, въ Англіи свободно живѣтся life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

### § 95. АПОСОПАТЕД FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.\*

E.g. the interjections ахъ! охъ! ухъ! эхъ! are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning "to cry out" ахъ, эхъ, etc.

---

\* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfectives in -нуть [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in -нуть; e.g. прыгъ jumped, стукъ knocked, and similarly бухъ bump.

e.g. Бухъ — поплыли въ водахъ глубокихъ.  
Plump — they swam in the deep waters.

Онѣ подошли къ дому и стукъ въ окно.  
They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap  
on the window.

Лиса пустилась къ лѣсу и юркъ въ вору.  
The fox started for the wood, and dashed into  
a hole.

### § 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. Этой войной разрушились все ходячія литера-  
турныя представенія.  
In this war all the current literary notions  
were destroyed.

Оба противника уничтожили самихъ себя (or  
уничтожили, perfective).  
Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase "faire . . ."; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.  
L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.  
Рабочій построилъ домъ.

*But* I have built a country-house.  
Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.  
Я построилъ себя усадьбу.

Женá обúдась.

My wife has put her shoes on.

Elle s'est chaussée, *or* elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побрjúюсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я брjúюсь самъ.

I shave *myself*.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мýться to wash (oneself), обувáться to put on shoes, etc., одѣвáться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Свирѣпости продолжáются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лиш́лся мáтери.

I have lost my father.

Онъ лиш́лся ж́изни.

He has died.

Онъ лиш́илъ себя́ ж́изни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. горд́иться чѣмъ to boast

бо́иться чегó to fear



Fourthly, many verbs with the reflexive import what was in Greek the middle voice, i.e. an action directed to the purpose of or affecting the subject of the verb, though the object governed be not the subject of the sentence.

e.g. Онъ стучить въ дѣрѣ.

He is knocking at the door.

Онъ стучится въ дѣрѣ.

He is knocking at the door (with some expectation concerning himself).

Вѳлосы старца (or у старца) бѣлѣють.

An old man's hair goes white.

Снѣжныя вершины горъ бѣлѣются въ отдалѣніи.  
The snow-peaks of the mountain are whitening  
in the distance.

Слѣшать to hear.

Слѣшаться obey.

Мѣхи кусаютъ.

Flies sting [bite].

Моя кошка кусается.

My cat bites (as her habit).

Признавать to acknowledge.

Признаваться to admit, confess.

Я призналъ его правымъ.

I acknowledged him to be right.

Я признался, что я не былъ совсѣмъ безвѣннымъ.

I confessed I was not altogether guiltless.

## § 97. RUSSIAN RELATIONSHIPS.

In the matter of words descriptive of relationships, Russian has an extraordinary abundance of special words.

Kinship is родствó.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родствá :—

General terms óбщія назвáнія.

прéдокъ, прéдки	ancestors
потóмки	descendants
рóдственникъ	kinsman
рóдственница	kinswoman
родъ (рóда)	family (genealogically)
семья́ (фамíлія)	a family

Special designations особья́ назвáнія :—

Lineal descent поколѣ́ніе нисходѣ́щее.

сынъ	son	} поколѣ́нія по прямóй ли́нії generations in the direct line
дочь	daughter	
дѣти	children	
внукъ	grandson	
вну́чка	granddaughter	
внучáта	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
пра́внукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколѣ́ніе восходѣ́щее.

оте́ць *	father
мать	mother
родітели	parents
дѣ́дъ	grandfather
ба́бушка (ба́бка)	grandmother
пра́дѣ́дъ	great grandfather
пра́бабушка	great grandmother
прапра́дѣ́дъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пра́шуръ	great great great grandfather

\* Ба́бушка in familiar speech.

## Collateral relations побóчное родствó.

братъ *	brother
сестра́	sister
дѣдя	uncle
тѣтя, тѣгка	aunt
† стрый	uncle, paternal
† стры́я	aunt, paternal
† уй	uncle, maternal
† уйка	aunt, maternal
† уецъ, уйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin on father's side
† стрыйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin, maternal side
племянникъ, -ица	nephew, niece
братаничъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by brother
сестричъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by sister
двоюродный братъ (сестра́)	first cousin §
троюродный братъ	second cousin, and so on
двоюродный племян- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

троюродная бабушка	great aunt
троюродный дѣдъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation; in ordinary language a third cousin would be родственикъ въ четвёртомъ поколѣннн, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

\* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.

## Relations by marriage родство по браку (свойство\*).

	<i>From the husband's side.</i>	<i>From the wife's side.</i>
Father-in-law	тесть	свёкорь
Mother-in-law	тёща	свекрѡвь
Brother-in-law	шуривъ <i>or</i> зять	дѣверь
	[v. § 24 (2)]	
Sister-in-law	сво́йченица, <i>or</i> свѣсть, <i>or</i> невѣстка	золѡвка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	сноха́ <i>or</i> невѣстка	сно́ха <i>or</i> невѣстка
Sister-in-law's husband	сво́йкъ	золѡвкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	ятровъ†	ятровъ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невѣстка; but my wife's sister is свѣсть *or* сво́йченица, and her husband сво́йкъ; my husband's sister золѡвка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminable.

Other terms to be noted are:—

о́тчимъ	step-father
ма́чеха	step-mother
па́сынокъ	step-son
па́дчерица	step-daughter
сво́дный братъ	step-brother
сво́дная сестра́	step-sister

\* But сво́йство property.

† Obsolete.

крѣстный отецъ	godfather
крѣстная мать	godmother
крѣстникъ (крѣстный сынъ)	godson
крѣстница (крѣстная дочь)	goddaughter
невѣста	bride
женѣхъ	bridegroom
женáтый	married (of a man)
замúжня	married (of a woman)
бракъ	marriage
свáдьба	wedding

*Note.*—мужъ женѣтся на женѣ, *but* женá выхóдвтъ замужъ за когó.

Онъ вѣдалъ Áнну замужъ за Плью.

He gave Anne in marriage to Плу.

Моá сестра́ замужемъ.

My sister is married.

Замúжество, замúжество marriage (of a woman).

Женѣтьба marriage (of a man).

Relations of the half-blood are said to be *единокрóвннй* ; e.g. мой братъ *единокрóвннй* my half-brother, and are further distinguished as *братъ по мáтери*, *сестра́ по отцú*, etc.





## ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. столъ, столá and столáръ; but óбщій, óбще, óбщество; товáрищъ, товáрищество); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, тоо, царь, царя́, царя́ца; but нача́льникъ, нача́льника, нача́льница; рабо́та, рабо́тникъ, рабо́тать, etc.

Some of the terminations are now "dead," i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

To many the letter ь will be found prefixed. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

## § 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-'ция, in foreign words, = "-tion"; e.g. áкция share, на́ция nation, позу́ция position. Always accented as shown.

-эръ, i.e. the French "-aire" in foreign words; e.g. акцио́нэръ. The plural is in -ы.



- ёръ, i.e. the French “-eur” in foreign words;  
e.g. актёръ. The plural is in -ы.
- измъ = English “-ism.” This suffix is mostly  
accented.
- истъ = English “-ist,” used in foreign words;  
e.g. артистъ artist.
- лѳгія = English “-logy” in foreign words; e.g.  
физиѳлѳгія physiology. Accented as shown.
- торъ, -соръ, in foreign words; the Latin “tor”;  
e.g. авторъ author, профессоръ professor. The  
termination is unaccented; the plural in а  
оу ы.

## II. Disused or dead suffixes.

- ѳба (dead). Nouns denoting action, mostly  
derived from nouns; e.g. свѳдѳба wedding  
(сватъ), друѳба friendship (другъ), судѳба  
judgment (судъ). These words are mostly  
paroxytone.
- ва unaccented (dead). Nouns denoting action of  
verbs; e.g. брѳтва razor, клѳтва oath. These  
words are generally paroxytone, unless derived  
from verbs.
- мя (мени) neuter (dead). Suffix of a number of  
nouns such as ѳмя name, пламя flame. Corre-  
sponds to Latin “-men,” always dissyllabic  
and paroxytone. [v. § 21.]
- уль (dead). A termination found in a few Tatar  
words; e.g. есауль captain, карауль sentry.
- ѳя accented, masc. second declension (dead).  
Names of agents; e.g. судѳя judge.

## III. Patronymics.

- ичъ, in patronymics; feminine -ична. [v. § 83, I.]
- овичъ, -евичъ, in patronymics; feminine -овна, -евна. [v. § 83, I.]
- овъ, -евъ, in patronymics; feminine -ова, -ева. [v. § 83, I.]

## IV. Termination to denote the female.

- а; e.g. раба́ (рабъ) slave.
- ева; e.g. король king, королева́.
- ица, forming feminines; and nouns from verbs; e.g. висѣлица gallows, племянница niece.
- ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official; e.g. фельдѣгерша the wife of a state messenger, докторша the doctor's wife.
- ыня, -иня, feminine formation; e.g. героиня heroine, княгиня countess, богиня goddess, сударыня, ба́рыня mistress.

## V. Abstract nouns.

- знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. болѣзнь illness.
- изна (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. отчѣзна fatherland, новизна́ novelty.
- ина, abstracts from adjectives; e.g. глубина́ depth, година́ time.
- ыня, -иня, forms abstracts from adjectives; e.g. гордыня́ pride.
- ие (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives; e.g. веселье mirth.

- ня denotes action; e.g. рѣзні́ massacre, бо́ища shambles.
- ость (есть only after ч, ш, ж, щ) (unaccented), forms abstract nouns of the third declension from adjectives, and retains accent of the adjective, unless it is oxytone; e.g. ско́рость, ско́рый quick; дви́жимость, дви́жимый moveable; на́гость, нагóй naked; све́жестъ, све́жий freshness.
- та́ forms abstract nouns from adjectives; e.g. бы́строта́ speed, красо́та́ beauty. Almost always accented as shown.
- щина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs; e.g. Обло́мовщина Oblómovism (Oblómov, the hero of a novel by Gončarov); пугачёвщина, the state of rebellion induced by the rebel Pugačov; Толсто́вщина, Tolstoyan teaching.
- ство forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns. One of the commonest terminations; e.g. ле́карство medicine, това́рищество society, воровствó thieving; челове́чество humanity.

## VI. Verbal nouns.

- прóвка forms nouns of action from verbs in -и́ровать; e.g. группирóвка the grouping, марширóвка the marching. Always thus accented.
- нiе (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns. [v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -нiё (враньё, драпiё).
- нiе (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]

## VII. The agent or implement.

- акъ, -якъ, an agent; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]
- арь, -ярь, an agent, derives nouns from nouns; e.g. столя́рь joiner, боча́рь cooper.
- арь, an agent; e.g. зпа́харь magician, понама́рь sexton.
- ецъ, agent or implement; e.g. при́имецъ a receiver, ва́лецъ a roller, бо́рецъ a wrestler.
- икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases; e.g. алхи́микъ alchemist, разска́зчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.
- ка (unaccented), an implement; e.g. винто́вка a rifle, во́зка carrying.
- никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, *v.* -якъ; e.g. алты́шникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возни́къ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -и́къ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.
- тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs; e.g. учи́тель teacher, писа́тель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. указа́тель index,

-у́нь fem., -у́нья (accented), depreciatory, agent from a verb; e.g. болту́нь, -у́нья chatterbox, бѣгу́нь runaway.

-чикъ, -щикъ, an agent; e.g. буфѣтчикъ a butler, ямщи́къ a coachman, ва́льщикъ a paper-layer.

### VIII. Diminutives.\*

#### (1) Masculine nouns of first declension.

-ѣкъ, -екъ, diminutive suffix for masculines; e.g. кружо́къ circle, кругъ.

-я (never accented), forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Пе́тя (Петръ), Ко́ля (Шикола́й), Серге́жа (Серге́й).

-о́чекъ, -и́чекъ, diminutive denoting affection for masculine nouns; e.g. дружо́чекъ (другъ), кружо́чекъ (кругъ).

-и́шко (masc. gen. -и́шка, etc.), and -и́шка, feminine (always thus accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from masculine nouns; e.g. сели́шко (село́), ворѣ́шка (воръ thief, pick-pocket).

#### (2) Neuter nouns of first declension.

-ько (seldom accented), forms diminutive of neuter nouns; e.g. крыльцо́, крыле́чко; *but* очко́.

-ьце, diminutive; e.g. зѣркальце mirror.

---

\* In Russian the use of diminutives and augmentatives is very common, the subtleties of meaning are difficult of translation into English, and can only be gathered by practice. It is important for the student to recognise the forms.

-ечко, -ышко, -ушко, forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns ; e.g. со́лнышко (солнце), гвѣ́здышко, крылѣ́чко.

-ы́шко, -и́шко, neut., and -ы́шка, -и́шка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns ; e.g. селѣ́шко nasty little village, короты́шка pigmy, землѣ́шка barren piece of ground, городѣ́шко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ька (unaccented), diminutive of feminines ; e.g. жѣ́нка little woman ; кнѣ́жка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names ; e.g. Са́шка (Александръ), Серѣ́жка (Сергѣ́й).

-е́пка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension ; e.g. ду́ше́вка (душá) little soul, darling.

-и́ца̄, -и́чка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns ; e.g. сестрѣ́ца.

-очка, -ечка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension ; e.g. скаме́ечка little stool, ка́рточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension ; e.g. ма́тушка (мать) mother, ба́тушка (ба́тя) father.

-ѣнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лоша́дѣнка nasty little horse, коровѣ́нка nasty little cow.

-ѹша, -ѹша, -ѹшка, -ѹшка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катѹ́ша from Катя́, Аксѹ́ша (from Аксѣ́нія).

### IX. Augmentatives.

-ище (masc. and neuter), -ища (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. домѹ́ще a big house (masc.); ду́рища a great fool (feminine); полóтнѹище a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жи́ище abode, кладбѹ́ище cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), у́чилище a school. When -ище is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-ино, -и́на, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. домѹ́на a very big house.

### X. Miscellaneous.

-анинѹ, -ни́нѹ, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5).] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-а́чь, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. борода́чь a long beard, бога́чь a rich man.

-ѣжѹ (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. паде́жѹ case (пада́тъ), грабе́жѹ plunder (гра́бятъ); in the oblique cases падежа́, etc.

- ёнокъ, plural -ята, the young of animals; e.g. волченокъ, волчата wolf; галченокъ jack-daw; but щенокъ, щенята puppy; волчокъ wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]
- ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb and follows accent of the past tense in лъ; e.g. начало beginning, одеяло blanket, веяло winnowing-fan, вайло chisel.

### § 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

- авый (dead); e.g. лукавый sly, величавый stately. Accented on termination -ав.
- ватый, a termination mainly used with adjectives denoting substance, generally accented -ватый; e.g. аляноватый clumsy, виноватый guilty, впитиватый eloquent.
- оватый, -еватый, added to adjectives, often has the sense of "-ish"; e.g. синеватый bluish, бѣловатый whitish. Always thus accented.
- витый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g. грановитый faceted, даровитый talented.
- кий, adjectival suffix; e.g. великий big.
- истый, from nouns, "resemblance"; e.g. золотистый gold-coloured, глинистый clayey.
- ический forms adjectives mostly from words derived from Greek; e.g. арифметический arithmetical, практический practical. Accented as shown,



- іі (unaccented), forms possessive adjectives; e.g. ворóній a crow's. [v. § 35.]
- ливый forms adjectives from nouns; e.g. счáстливъ happy, стыдлѣвый shamefast.
- мый, present passive participle, equivalent to "-ble." [v. § 89, II.]
- ов-, -ев-, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. боковóй lateral, Петрóвъ of Peter, Алексѣевъ of Alexis, верхóй upper, тѣсовый of yew, вѣковóй age-long.
- óкій adjectival ending, -окъ substantive; e.g. глубóкій deep, знатóкъ an expert, зрачóкъ pupil of eye.
- онькій, -енькій, forms adjectives with diminutive meaning; e.g. мáленькій very small, плóхонькій unwell, тѣхонькій silent.
- учій, -ячій, former pres. part. act., now adjectival; e.g. могúчій powerful, горячій hot, зыбúчій vacillating. [v. § 44.]
- чатый, forming descriptive adjectives; e.g. колѣвчатый knotted, зубчáтый notched. Accentuation follows that of principal noun.
- чивъ, forming adjectives; e.g. задúмчивый thoughtful, говорчивый talkative. The termination is unaccented.
- шній, adjectival from nouns and adverbs; e.g. домашній domestic, вчерáшній yesterday's, тепѣрешній of the present time,

-скій, -скою, forms adjectives of all sorts.

There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent -скою; e.g. мужскою male, людскою public, городскою civic.

-вый, -вою, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. больною ill, государственный of the State, важный important.

-нъ, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension; e.g. дяди́нъ the uncle's. [v. § 34(2).]

-ѣйшій, -айшій, -ѣ, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-янный, -яною, adjectives of substance; e.g. водяною watery, деревянный wooden, масляный buttery.

#### § 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-ировать (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words; e.g. атрофи́ровать to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-ить (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs; e.g. стар́ить to make old, бѣсн́ить to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-нуть, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-ывать, -ивать, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-ѣть (third conjugation), inceptive verbs; e.g. алѣ́ть to grow red, краснѣ́ть to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in ч, ш, щ, the termination is -ать, v. § 55, II.

## APPENDIX.

I. *Verbs of asking.* Verbs of asking and wishing in Russian frequently take a genitive, when the object is uncertain, and in such events, a partitive genitive in *y*, when such exists. [v. § 24 (1).]

e.g. Онъ хóчетъ ча́ю (*or* ему́ хóчется ча́ю).  
He wants some tea.

*But* Онъ хóчетъ сту́ль [*онъ* про́ситъ сту́ла].  
He wants a chair.

[Онъ ждётъ получéнiя дéнегъ].  
He is waiting for the receipt of money.

Further observe the following differences:—

Я спра́шиваю у васъ, гдѣ вы бы́ли.  
I ask you where you were.

Я прошу́ васъ сказа́ть мнѣ, кто онъ.  
I ask you to tell me who he is.

Я прошу́ у васъ одолжéнiя.  
I ask you for a loan.

Онъ спра́шивалъ у нача́льника ста́нции, когда́ уйде́тъ по́здъ въ Москвú.  
He asked the station-master, when the train left

for Moscow. [v. § 90, V.]:

Вы спроси́ли Ива́на объ успѣ́хѣ егó дѣ́ль[а] *or*  
сдѣ́локъ (affairs).

You asked John as to the success of his business.

Я прошу́ васъ о помилова́нiи.  
I beg you for mercy.

II. In English, in replying to questions when something happens, we indicate the time of day, though there is no great emphasis on the point; e.g. When did (will) you call? Yesterday (to-morrow) morning (afternoon, evening).

In Russian, unless the time of day is important, *вчера́, за́втра, се́годня* should be used by themselves.

Thus: *когда́ вы посе́тили (посе́тите)?*

*Вчера́ (се́годня, за́втра)*, corresponding to yesterday (morning, etc.), this morning (afternoon, to-night, etc.), to-morrow morning (afternoon, etc.).

If essential, one may add *у́тромъ, въ по́лдень, ве́черомъ, но́чью*, e.g. *въ три часа́ пополۇдни*.

*после́завтра* the day after to-morrow  
*тре́тьяго дня* the day before yesterday

III. The indeclinable participle must always refer to the subject of the sentence [v. § 89, I.], like the English participle in -ing.

But, as in English, some forms have become prepositional, and merely govern the case required by the original verb; e.g. "regarding."

So, too, in Russian, *благодаря́* (dative) "thanks to," *для́* (= *дѣля́*) (genitive), *несмотря́ на* (что) notwithstanding.

IV. (1) The common Aryan root *STA* (Latin *stare*, Greek *ἵστημι*, English *stand*) is represented by five verbs in Russian, each with its perfective and imperfective. These must be carefully distinguished.

(α) -ставáть imperfective, only in compounds;  
 стать perfective. [v. § 57 (1) (γ) and § 53 (5).]  
 стáну means "I shall become."

Observe the compounds—

возставáть	to revolt
заставáть	to find, light on
наставáть	to approach (intransitive)
оставáться	to remain, be left
переставáть	to leave off (doing something)
разставáться	to separate <i>or</i> leave (съ instrumental)
доставáть	(transitive) to obtain, get, procure
недоставáть	to be wanting, fail (impersonal)
отставáть	to remain behind
уставáть	to become tired
вставáть	to get up

Perfectives, *возстáть, застáть, etc.*

(β) сто́ить (стою́, стои́шь) to stand, -ста́ивать,  
 iterative used in compounds as the im-  
 perfective. [v. § 55, I.]

Compounds—

предсто́ить	to impend (no perfective)
состо́ить (изъ)	to consist (no perfective)
заста́иваться	to stand too long, e.g. stagnate
наста́ивать (на loc.)	to insist
отста́ивать	to defend (transitive)
доста́ивать (до)	to stand to the end, endure.

(γ) сто́ить (стою́, стои́шь) to cost, to be worth  
 (чегó кому́)

There are no compounds, and there is no perfective.

(δ) ста́вить (-стави́ть) to set up, establish.

There are very many compounds of similar meaning, but observe—

заставля́ть	to enforce <i>or</i> compel
представля́ть	to introduce (кого́ кому́)
вставля́ть	to insert
оставля́ть	to abandon

(ε) становя́ться (становлю́сь, станóвится), -станáвливаются to become.

There are very many compounds, observe—  
останáвливать to arrest, delay

(2) The root LEG (English *lie*, German *liegen*) has three forms.

(α) лечь (ля́гу) [v. § 49, I.], iterative -легáть to lie.

There are a few easy compounds—

e.g. залегáть to lie behind, hide.

(β) лежáть (лежú, лежи́шь) to lie, the “abstract” form to лечь.

There are a few compounds—

e.g. полежáть to lie a short [time]

возлежáть to lie upon

надлежáть to pertain

(γ) -ложáть (-лагáть iterative) to place lying-down;  
ложáться to lie down.

There are very many compounds, but note—

отлагáть to defer

прилагáть to enclose

полагáть to place, suppose

предлагáть to propose, etc.

(Perfectives отложáть, etc.)

(3) The root SED (Latin *sedere*, Greek *ἕδος*, English *sit*) has three forms.

(a) сѣсть (сѣду, v. § 49, III.) perfective, I shall sit down (imperfective садѣться).

(β) сидѣть imperfective (сиджу́, сиди́шь), to sit.

(γ) садѣть to set [transitive]; (iterative forms -сажа́ть, -сажда́ть, and -сажива́ть); садѣться to sit down.

There are very many compounds, of them note—

осажа́ть to besiege  
 заса́живать to plant, place  
 пасажа́ть to set, plant, etc.

V. The following forms of independent verbs often occasion some confusion. A close observation of the accentuation will differentiate them clearly.

идѣти	ходи́ть	ѣхать	-ѣжа́ть	ѣсть	ѣда́ть
To go		To ride <i>or</i> drive		To eat	
Concrete.	Abstract.	Iterative.		Iterative.	
иду́	хожу́	ѣду	-ѣжа́ю	ѣмъ	-ѣда́ю
иде́шь	ходи́шь	ѣдешь	-ѣжа́ешь	ѣшь	-ѣда́ешь
иде́тъ	ходи́тъ	ѣдетъ	etc.	ѣстъ	etc.
иде́мъ	ходи́мъ	ѣдемъ		ѣди́мъ	
иде́те	ходи́те	ѣдете		ѣди́те	
иду́тъ	ходи́тъ	ѣдутъ		ѣди́тъ	

Present participle active.

иду́щій | ходя́щій | ѣду́щій | -ѣжа́ющій | ѣдя́щій | -ѣда́ющій

In compound verbs the forms -иду́, -ѣду, and -ѣмъ form the perfectives; and the forms -хожу́ (-ходи́тъ), -ѣжа́ть, and -ѣда́ть the imperfectives.

VI. *The Aspects.* On this difficult point a few extra hints may be added. On the distinction of *увидать*, *увидѣть*, *видать*, *видѣть*.

e.g. *Оглянувшись, онъ увидаль издали поговю.*

He glanced round and caught sight of the chase from afar.

*Ты чудеса увидишь подь микроскопомь.*

You will see marvels under the microscope.

*увидать* is more instantaneous and familiar.

To explain the use of the aspects in connected prose, the paragraph should be considered as though it were a complex sentence (which Russian avoids); the principal verbs in this imaginary period will be marked by the perfectives. The same process explains the imperfective future.

e.g. "I shall soon be travelling, and will then write you a letter"; i.e. "whilst I am travelling... I will..."

In Russian: *Я скоро буду путешествовать, и тогда напишю тебѣ.*

Cf. the Latin *dum ibo, scribam.*

VII. The order of words in Russian is practically the same as in English. There are a few slight differences.

(1) When there are several pronouns they attract each other.

e.g. *Я ему разскажю, когда подьѣду къ городу.*

I will tell him when I am near the town.

*Мнѣ его не жаль.*

I am not sorry for him.



*But* Я расскажѹ вáшей тёткѣ, когда . . .

I will tell your aunt . . .

Мнѣ жаль солдатскихъ вдовъ.

I am sorry for soldiers' widows.

(2) When there are two adverbial expressions of time and place, that of time generally precedes that of place.

e.g. I recently saw your brother in Paris.

Я недавно видѣлъ вáшего брата въ Парижѣ.

(3) The order of pronoun and verb is *not* changed in interrogative sentences beginning with an interrogative pronoun.

e.g. Гдѣ вы нашлѹ потерянную шляпку?

Where did you find the lost hat?

VIII. *The Passive Voice* is expressed in Russian in four ways:—

(*α*) By the reflexive pronoun.

e.g. Побѣда достигáется.

Victory is being achieved.

La victoire s'accomplit.

(*β*) By *быть* and the present participle passive.

e.g. Быть лишѣнными всѣхъ привилѣгій — дѡля побѣжденныхъ.

To be deprived of all their privileges is the fate of the vanquished.

(*γ*) By *быть* and the past participle passive.

e.g. Вся Еврѡпа оскорблена нѣмецкимъ произволомъ.

All of Europe is (or has been) (was, add *была́*) affronted by German arbitrariness.

(δ) By converting the sentence and using the indeterminate third person plural. [v. § 94, II.]

e.g. Разруша́ютъ моё счастье.

My happiness is being destroyed.

IX. The translation of “must” and “ought.”

“Must” may be rendered:—

(α) By *на́до* or *нѣ́жно* and infinitive.

e.g. Мнѣ́ *на́до* уйт́и. I must go out.

(β) By *до́лженъ* (-на́, -но́).

e.g. Я́ *до́лженъ* снѣ́шить.

I must hurry, i.e. ought to hurry.

Она́ *должна́* была́ уо́бжа́тъ.

She had to run away.

Be very careful to distinguish the use of *до́лженъ* when it means “owing a debt.”

e.g. Ты́ ему́ *должна́* за шу́бу.

You (fem.) are in debt to him for a fur coat.

Твоя́ сестра́ мнѣ́ была́ *должна́* со́рокъ рубли́ей за кварта́ру.

Your sister owed me forty roubles for her apartments.

*Observe.*—Я́ *до́лженъ* былъ (бу́ду) means “I have had to . . . , I shall have to . . . ,” but я́ *былъ* (бу́ду) *до́лженъ* means “I owed (shall owe).”

*Долгъ* means “debt” or “duty”; *до́лжность* a specific duty or office.

A useful synonym is *обязанный*; *обязанность* obligation, obliged (*чѣ́мъ* кому́).

e.g. Я́ ему́ *обязанъ* возо́становле́ниемъ мое́й че́сти.

I owe him the re-establishment of my honour.

Russian occasionally uses a very contracted style, cf. the apocopated past tense [§ 95].

e.g. Ребята! смотри́ [for смотри́те] молодца́ми у меня́ [supply бу́дьте]; изъ ружей не паля́ть; а штыка́ми ихъ! Когда́ я крикну́, ура́, за мной, то не отстава́ть! Дружна́й, главно́е дѣло!

Men! Look. [Behave like] brave boys! Do not fire your rifles; but with the bayonet at 'em. When I shout Hurrah, then after me; then no lagging! Vigorously [that's] the principal thing.

Soldiers are always addressed as ребята, as in French *mes enfants*.

X. The distinct meanings of *съ*, *отъ*, and *изъ* are sometimes difficult to seize. These sentences may fix them on the memory.

Эти селя́не пришлѣи *съ* Балтійскаго моря́, *изъ* города́ Б., убу́гая *отъ* притѣсненій нѣмцевъ.

These country-folk came *from* [i.e. down from] the Baltic, *out of* the city of B., escaping [away] *from* the persecutions of the Germans.

The following paragraph illustrates the use of temporal prepositions.

До моего́ приѣзда сюда́ я про́жилъ *съ* два мѣсяца (или *около* двухъ мѣсяцевъ) въ Петроградѣ. Оттуда́ я напра́вился въ Псковъ, гдѣ я остава́лся *два* недѣли. А тепѣрь, *че́резъ* три дня, я поѣду́ въ Москву́, гдѣ оста́нусь *съ* трина́дцатаго сего́ мѣсяца *до* двадца́таго, и *въ* течѣніе́ этого́

семиднёваго досуга отдохнѣю немнѣжко. Тамъ по утрамъ буду ходитъ въ музеи. Послѣ этого (или потомъ) самъ не знаю, что буду дѣлать.

Up to my arrival here [before this time I had stayed] I lived about two months in Petrograd. Thence I went to Pskov, where I remained a fortnight. Now, in three days' time, I shall go to Moscow, where I shall stay from the 13th to the 20th instant, and during this seven days' leisure I shall have a short rest. There I shall visit the Museums in the mornings. After that, I don't know what I shall be doing.

#### XI. Some words meaning *to burn* and *to light*.

To burn (transitive) is жечь; to consume by fire сжигать, сжечь; to burn (intransitive) is горѣть (горю, горитъ); a fire (at home) is огонь (огни); a fire (*incendie*) is пожаръ; to burst into flame is воспламеняться (плáмя flame); блестять, (блеститъ) [блеснѣть perfective] is to shine, an alternative form is блистать (блещу, or блещу́, блещешь); сиять (сияю) to glitter.

XII. The following idiomatic use of the infinitive should be noted.

Обрадоваться, они не обрадовались, но не сочли́ нужнымъ наложить своё veto. [Тургеневъ.]  
As to being glad they were not glad, but they did not think fit to interpose their veto.

XIII. The Russian for "yes" is да, but it is much less used than in English. Generally, the verb is repeated.

e.g. Вы-ли застáли егó дóма? Застáла.

Did *you* find him at home? Yes [in the feminine].

Понимáете-ли вы (пóняли), поймéте? Понимáю (пóнялъ, поймý).

Do you understand (did you, will you)? Yes.

XIV. The Russian for "to sleep" is спать (сплю, спишь, v. § 55, I.). Perfectives are, however, formed from the verb -снуть (-снёшь, -снулъ, cf. сонъ sleep); and imperfectives in -сыпáть, e.g. засыпáть, заснýть to go to sleep.

Be careful to distinguish this word from -сыпáть, сыпáть, to strew, e.g. засыпáть to bestrew, perfective засыпáть, засыплю, засыплешь, etc. [v. § 59 (3).]

Дремáть (дремлю́, дрёмлешь) is also "to sleep" or "slumber."

"I dreamed" is either я видѣлъ сонъ, or я видѣлъ во снѣ, or мнѣ снѣлось.

XV. Words connoting "cost," "expense," etc.

The following hints may be useful.

Чегó стóитъ вáша лóшадь?

Цѣнá is the price, оцѣнить to value; стóимость is the worth *or* cost; достóинство, достóинный worthiness, worthy; expense is издѣрка, расхóдь, трáта; expensive дорогóй, etc.; to spend трáтить (истрáтить), расхóдовать, etc.; income is дохóдь, прихóдь; profit is вы́года, при́быль (fem.); loss is потѣря, убы́токъ.

XVI. *The accentuation of the Russian noun.* In the course of this grammar, various hints have been dropped. It is impossible to lay down absolute rules, but the matter may be briefly resumed.

(i) Original forms. These are dissyllabic, because amongst the dissyllabic, masculines in *ѣ* and *ѧ*, feminines in *ѧ* are to be included, as these vowels only became mute late in the development of the language. The student, indeed, would do better to take as his noun an inflexion in *a* or *u*.

e.g. баба (nominative), gen. plural бабъ; столá (table—gen. sing.), столъ (nom. singular).

In § 45 it was laid down that *only dissyllabic verbs accented on the termination could vary the accent.*

In § 29 it was pointed out that *only dissyllabic feminines in a and я, accented on the termination, could shift the accent.*

The same principle applies to dissyllabic nouns in general, including masculines in *ѣ* and *ѧ*. The student must imagine a lost accent on the *ѣ* termination, which has shifted back on to the root. E.g.

*Invariable:—*

врагѣ́, врага́, враги́ foe  
 волѣ́, волá, волы́ bull  
 трудѣ́, труда́, труды́ work  
 Москва́, Москвы́ (Москву́) Moscow  
 ротѣ́ (рътѣ́), рта, рты́ mouth  
 левѣ́ (львѣ́), левá, львы́ lion  
 путьѣ́, путі́, пути́ path

*Variable* :—

садъ', сада, сады́ garden  
 родъ', рода, роды́, родо́въ race  
 стѣна́, стѣны́ (стѣну), стѣны́ wall

*Invariable* :—

ба́ба woman (because it is paroxytone)  
 взно́съ contribution (because it is paroxytone)  
 зу́бъ tooth (because it is paroxytone)  
 Cf. вѣ́рить, вѣ́рю believe (because it is paroxytone)

{	сидѣ́тъ, сидѣ́тъ sit	}— <i>Invariable</i> .
	не́сти, несе́шь carry	
	пла́тить, пла́титъ pay— <i>Variable</i> .	

*Also invariable* :—

произво́ль caprice (because polysyllabic)  
 проти́вникъ antagonist (because polysyllabic)  
 учени́къ pupil (because polysyllabic and accented  
 on the termination)  
 грабе́жъ' plunder (because polysyllabic and  
 accented on the termination)

Dissyllabic neuters in *o* and *e* follow the same rule ; but, unlike the feminines [v. § 27], can reverse the accent, even though accented on the root in the singular. *All* dissyllabic neuters accented in the singular on the ultimate have a shifting accent ; and *some* of those accented on the root. E.g.

*Variable* :—

село́, селá, сѣла village  
 ведро́, ведрá, ве́дра pail  
 мѣсто, мѣста, мѣста́ place  
 поле́, поля́, поля́ field

*Invariable* :—

úro, úra, úra yoke

гórho, гópna, гópna throat

All polysyllabic neuters have a fixed accent.

(ii) Certain nominal terminations of *original* nouns have a fixed accent, viz. :—

The locative in -y [v. § 24 (1)] is always oxytone.

The genitive in -y is always paroxytone.

Some locatives in -и [v. § 30] is always oxytone.

The plural forms -ами, -ахъ, -ями, -яхъ in variable nouns are generally accented.

e.g. рука́, ру́ки, рука́ми, рука́хъ

Also, by way of exception, some few nouns in -ость. [v. § 31 (1).]

e.g. должностя́ми, должностя́хъ

(iii) Derivative nouns. These have a fixed accentuation, for which consult the section headed Etymology. E.g. -ежъ always accents the termination; derivatives in -ецъ, -акъ, -якъ, -икъ, -ыкъ, -екъ have a fixed accent on the termination, if the nominative is also oxytone; otherwise a fixed accent on the syllable accented in the nominative. E.g. учени́къ pupil, учени́ка; любóвникъ lover, любóвника.

XVII. *The accentuation of the Russian verb.* The general rules are simple, and are fully expounded in § 46. Some very few anomalies exist.

(1) A few verbs, mostly ending -ять, throw the accent back on to the root in the undeclined present participle.



e.g. сто́ять (стои́шь) stand, сто́я  
 лежа́ть (лежи́шь) lie, ле́жа  
 молча́ть (молчи́шь) to be silent, мо́лча  
 сидѣ́ть (сиди́шь) to sit, си́дя (от сиди́)

(2) A very few verbs in -а́ть, -а́ю, with fixed accents, throw the accent back in the past participle passive.

e.g. воспита́ть (-та́ю)	to educate	воспи́танный
испита́ть (-та́ю)	to experience	испи́танный
ожида́ть	expect	неожи́даемый
		unexpected
потери́ть (-и́ю)	lose	потери́вшийся

(3) In some very few dissyllabic paroxytone verbs the verbal noun shifts the accent forward.

e.g. пока́яться	repent	пока́яние
увѣ́рить	convince	увѣ́рѣние
ви́дѣть	to see	ви́дѣние (a vision)

The *rule* being to preserve the accent of the infinitive.

e.g. лелѣ́ять	to fondle	лелѣ́яние
вѣ́ять	to blow	вѣ́яние
та́ять	to thaw	та́яние
чу́ять	to scent	чу́яние
слу́шать	to hear	слу́шание
and also любѣ́зничать	to court	любѣ́зничание

(4) In § 45 it was laid down that *only* dissyllabic verbs accented on the termination might vary or shift the accent.

There are a very few exceptions: e.g. станов́иться to become, станóвишься, and a number of onomatopoeic verbs, descriptive of sounds, in -отáть, -етáть.

e.g. грохотáть	to thunder	грохóчень
хохотáть	to laugh	хохóчень
хлопотáть	to bestir oneself	хлопóчень
лепетáть	to stammer	лепéчень
бормотáть	to mumble	бормóчень

## SOME PRESS OPINIONS OF THIS BOOK.

---

“. . . clear and well arranged. The aspects of the Russian verbs are very lucidly explained, and the learner will find the advantage of reading this section with particular care. . . . Mr. Magnus's *Grammar* is printed in beautifully bold type, and should be useful even to the advanced student.”—*The Journal of Education*.

“This book will be found most helpful by students who wish to acquire a more scientific knowledge of Russian than is to be gathered from elementary works.”—*Cambridge Review*.

“To the earnest student, desiring a knowledge at once thorough, practical, and philological of the Russian tongue, we heartily recommend this volume.”—*Educational News*.

“This grammar is a welcome addition to the library of the student of Russian, the treatment of the subject being both scientific and easy to follow. The chapters on the noun and the verb are particularly good.”—*Times Russian Supplement*.

“Here we have a grammar which is historical in method and exceedingly practical in its matter. It would be difficult to conceive one more valuable and helpful as an introduction to the study of Russian. The printing and other practical matters are in full keeping with the book's value.”—*Education*.

“The orderly, scientific, and up-to-date methods of exposition adopted by the author inspire confidence and a reasonable hopefulness. Mr. Magnus is an enthusiastic and reliable teacher who presents his subject in a manner suited to the mentality of the English-speaking student.”—*Glasgow Herald*.

“The grammar, a scholarly and skilfully condensed exposition, cannot but prove especially useful to English students, since it explains the structure and usages of Russian with a special regard to those of English, and does not, like most grammars of this tongue, proceed stiffly upon the traditional lines. The explanation of the Russian verb is thus much simplified. The book pays particular attention to the perplexing puzzles of accentuation, and it is in all respects a well-considered, practical, and helpful book for students.”—*The Scotsman*.

## French Language and Literature.

# GRAMMAIRE FRANÇAISE ÉLÉMENTAIRE AVEC EXERCICES

(A GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK COMBINED).

BY W. MANSFIELD POOLE, M.A.

MAGDALEN COLLEGE, OXFORD; HEAD OF THE MODERN  
LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT, ROYAL NAVAL COLLEGE, DSBORNE.

Third (Revised) Edition. 2s. 6d.

*In the new edition the Terminology recommended by the Joint Committee on Grammatical Terminology has been adopted, and the verbs have received considerable addition.*

This elementary grammar is intended for pupils up to the age of 14 or 15, who are learning French on modern lines.

The fact that many reformers have paid insufficient attention to the systematic teaching of grammar has brought much adverse criticism upon reform methods in general. It is as unnecessary—as it is unwise—to neglect this subject, which can easily be brought into line with the requirements of the direct method by being taught in French.

Some teachers maintain that while the rest of the subject should be taught entirely in French, the Grammar should be taught entirely in English. This method, apart from its faults of principle, will never be adopted by a large majority of teachers, because they believe that grammar is an essential part of the reading lesson and must be treated—no less than the text—in the foreign language.

Such a system requires a grammar written in French. I hope that this book—which is the outcome of many years' work on modern lines with boys from 10 to 14 years of age—will meet the requirements of such teachers. It is always difficult to decide what to retain and what to reject in an elementary grammar: but I have purposely omitted all unusual and irregular forms which did not seem to me to be absolutely necessary.

## GRAMMAIRE FRANÇAISE

A French Grammar for the Use of the Middle Classes in Schools. By W. Mansfield Poole, M.A., and Michel Becker, Second Impression. 2s. 6d.

# LECTURES SCOLAIRES

Edited by W. MANSFIELD POOLE, M.A.,

HEAD OF THE MODERN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT,  
ROYAL NAVAL COLLEGE, OSBORNE;

And E. L. LASSIMONNE, 

SENIOR MASTER, ROYAL NAVAL COLLEGE, OSBORNE.

This series consists, mainly, of new and interesting stories hitherto unpublished in England. One of the chief features of the books is that the questions, which are in French, are *facing the texts*. These questions are divided into two parts, the first ten being questions on the meaning, the subsequent ten on the grammar of the page facing them. The notes at the end of the book are written entirely in French.

SÉRIE ÉLÉMENTAIRE. *1s.* each.

\*AVENTURES. MERVEILLEUSES. D'après NATHANAEL HAWTHORNE

\*GUILLAUME LE TISSERAND. Par ALBERT WOLFF.

\*LE TOUCHER D'OR. D'après NATHANAEL HAWTHORNE.

LA SOURIS BLANCHE. Par HÉGÉSIPPE MOREAU.

LES VOISINS DE CAMPAGNE. Par HENRI MONNIER.

LE CHÊNE PARLANT. Par GEORGE SAND.

SÉRIE INTERMÉDIAIRE. *1s. 6d.* each.

UN HOMME À LA MER. Extrait adapté des *Aventures de Robert—Robert et son fidèle compagnon Toussaint Lavenette*. Par LOUIS DESNOYERS.

CE GREDIN DE PRITCHARD! Anecdotes Extraites de *L'Histoire de mes Bêtes*. Par ALEXANDRE DUMAS (Père).

UN AIGLON. Anecdote Extraite de *La Cape et l'Épée*. Par AMÉDÉE ACHARD.

\*LE PARCHEMIN DU DOCTEUR MAURE ET L'ONCLE D'AMÉRIQUE. Par ÉMILE SOUVESTRE.

SÉRIE SUPÉRIEURE. *1s. 6d.* each.

NOIRAUD, GUIGNOL, ET DEUX CYCLONES. Par LUDOVIC HALÉVY, de l'Académie Française.

GIL BLAS CHEZ LES BRIGANDS Par LE SAGE.

LE MOURON ROUGE. Adapté de l'Anglais de Madame la BARONNE ORCZY.

MARTIN PAZ. Par JULES VERNE.

\* Both the texts and the questions of these books are easier than the others of the Series to which they belong.

# TEXTES ET QUESTIONS

BY W. MANSFIELD POOLE, M.A.,

And E. L. LASSIMONNE, I 

I. CLASSES ÉLÉMENTAIRES. 1s. 6d.; Key, 2s. 8d.

*In the new edition the Terminology recommended by the Joint Committee on Grammatical Terminology has been adopted.*

For the higher forms of Preparatory Schools and the lower forms of Secondary Schools (ages 12-14). For the following exams.: Navy, Oxford and Cambridge Junior Locals, Public School Scholarships, etc.

II. CLASSES AVANCÉES. 2s. 6d.; Key, 2s. 8d.

For middle and upper forms (ages 15-17). For the following exams.: Oxford and Cambridge Senior Locals, Sandhurst, Woolwich, London Matriculation, etc.

The authors have collected in these two volumes a varied selection of anecdotes and short extracts of an interesting and instructive character, and carefully graduated in difficulty.

The pupil's grasp of the grammar as well as of the subject-matter of the text is thoroughly tested by means of a large number of questions. In Volume I each extract has a page of questions opposite to it, but in Volume II this arrangement has been found impossible owing to the large number of questions, which have accordingly been placed at the end of the book.

## UNE CINQUANTAINÉ DE MORCEAUX DE POÉSIE FRANÇAISE

AVEC DES QUESTIONS POUR SERVIR DE BASE À LA  
CONVERSATION

Collection Scolaire choisie par

ALEX. ED. DELÉPINE.

1s.

An effort has been made to collect together in this little volume passages which are not too hackneyed nor too sentimental in tone.

## FRENCH AND GERMAN PICTURE VOCABULARY

In Phonetic and ordinary Transcript. By W. Mansfield Poole, M.A. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.

This volume contains 540 pictures and 4 skeleton maps, illustrating 550 substantives and 144 geographical names. The vocabulary, in French and German, is printed in phonetic and in ordinary type, each part being kept separate. The alphabet of the Association Phonétique Internationale has been adopted for the phonetic part.

## COMMERCIAL FRENCH

By W. Mansfield Poole, M.A., Head of the Modern Language Department, Royal Naval College, Osborne, and Michel Becker, Professor at the École Alsacienne, Paris. With a Map in each volume. In Two Parts. 2s. 6d. each.

*Synopsis of Contents.* PART I. PAGES 1-135 CONTAIN A HUNDRED READING-PIECES IN FRENCH, WITH QUESTIONS IN SAME LANGUAGE AS THE READING MATTER, AND GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES FOUNDED ON WHAT HAS GONE BEFORE—PAGES 136-139 CONTAIN THE FRENCH WEIGHTS AND MEASURES AND KINDRED INFORMATION—PAGES 140-183 CONTAIN A CONCISE GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE—PAGES 184-223 VOCABULARY.

PART II. PAGES 1-239 CONTAIN EIGHTY-SEVEN READING-PIECES OF GRADUATED DIFFICULTY—PAGES 240-283 CONTAIN BRIEF NOTES IN FRENCH ON THE FOREGOING.

## COMMERCIAL FRENCH READER

By W. Mansfield Poole, M.A., and Michel Becker. 1s. 6d.

This book consists of the Reading-Pieces and Questions contained in *Commercial French*, Part I. The latter book has already been through five editions, and the authors have felt themselves justified in publishing under another title and at a considerably reduced price, the more valuable parts of their first book.

## FRENCH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE

By Professor C. Glauser, Ph.D., Officier d'Académie, Professeur à l'Académie de Commerce de Vienne, etc. Arranged and Adapted by W. Mansfield Poole, M.A. 4s. 6d.

This work includes the course of "Commercial French" by Poole and Becker, and is intended for use in the highest commercial classes.

# MURRAY'S FRENCH TEXTS.

FOR UPPER AND MIDDLE FORMS.

Edited by W. G. HARTOG, M.A. (Lond.),

LECTURER IN FRENCH AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON; ORAL EXAMINER  
TO THE LONDON COUNTY COUNCIL AND TO THE ARMY QUALIFYING BOARD

*One Shilling and Sixpence each.*

*With Notes in French at the end of the text, questions, grammatical exercises, and suggestions for free compositions, parsing, dictation, &c.*

LA MARE AU DIABLE. Par GEORGE SAND.

CONFESSIONS d'un OUVRIER. Par ÉMILE SOUVESTRE.

BUG-JARGAL. Par VICTOR HUGO.

LA VÉNUS D'ILLE ET LA DAME DE PIQUE.

Par PROSPER MÉRIMÉE.

*With Notes in French only (no 'Questionnaire').*

CHRONIQUE DU RÈGNE DE CHARLES IX.

By PROSPER MÉRIMÉE. Edited by ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A.,  
Professor of French at University College, Nottingham. *1s. 6d.*

UN EPISODE DE WATERLOO (Extrait de la Chartreuse de Parme). Par STENDHAL. Edited by MAURICE A. GEROTH-  
WOHL, Litt.D., L.-ès-L., Professor of Romance Languages,  
Trinity College, Dublin. *1s. 6d.*

## German.

# LESESTÜCKE MIT FRAGEN

BY A. E. WILSON, B.A.,

SENIOR GERMAN MASTER AT WINCHESTER COLLEGE;

and A. G. DENNISTON, B.A.,

ASSISTANT MODERN LANGUAGE MASTER AT R.N. COLLEGE, OSEBORNE.

2s.

The first twenty-four pages contain a digest of elementary grammar. Following these are forty reading pieces with numerous questions (in German) facing the page of text to which they refer.



# A "MIDDLE METHOD" GERMAN COURSE

READING-BOOK AND GRAMMAR WITH DIRECT  
METHOD AND RE-TRANSLATION EXERCISES.

BY F. W. M. DRAPER

B.A. (Cantab.), L.-ès-L. (University of Paris),

FORMERLY CLASSICAL SCHOLAR OF QUEEN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, ASSISTANT  
MASTER AT THE CITY OF LONDON SCHOOL.

2s. 6d.

Each subject is treated on a double page. It consists of three parts—(1) The narrative: (2) Wordgroups; (3) Oral Questions. Besides this, there are several carefully graduated exercises on each reading lesson, and a tabulated grammar appendix, to which constant reference is made throughout. *The systematic teaching of composition and grammar is an important factor in the method of the book.*

*The Times.*—"This is a sensible German course, planned on a principle which combines the 'direct method' with the old. The passages for translation seem to be better chosen than usual; the author has succeeded in dealing with the *Realien* of German life in a fresh and interesting way."

## DER NEUE LEITFADEN

The Student's First German Book. By L. M. de la Motte  
Tischbrock, Modern Language Master at the Modern School,  
Bedford. 2s. 6d.

The aim of this book is to enable the learner to "walk alone" as soon as possible; to give him the power to read and to appreciate German books or papers dealing with special topics of interest with as little preliminary drill as is consistent with thoroughness.

Grammatical soundness has not been neglected. While unnecessary details are omitted, it is hoped that nothing which conduces to accuracy of expression and literary taste has been sacrificed.

*Nature.*—"A satisfactory course for students—juvenile or adult—commencing the study of the German language is provided in this book. In addition to being grammatically and educationally sound, and of good literary quality, the volume contains many extracts on scientific subjects as exercises for reading and translation."

## COMMERCIAL GERMAN

In Two Parts. By **Gustav Hein**, University of Berlin, and late Lecturer in German (Honours) to the University of Aberdeen, and **Michel Becker**. With a Map in each Volume. **Part I**, New Edition, to which the **Exercises in Translation and Composition**, hitherto only sold separately, are added, *3s. 6d.*; **Part II**, *4s. 6d.* Keys *2s. 9d.* each Part.

These books are on exactly the same plan as Poole and Becker's *Commercial French*. Parts I and II. (p. 24.)

## EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION AND COMPOSITION

For Use with Commercial German. **Part I**. Compiled by **Gustav Hein**. *1s.*

### Russian.

## A CONCISE GRAMMAR OF THE RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

By **Leonard A. Magnus, LL.B.** *5s. net.*

The difficulties of the Russian language, which have been exaggerated, can be largely overcome by a slight rearrangement of the conventional Semi-Latin form of grammar, so adapting it more exactly to the nature of Slav speech. Special stress has been laid on the rules of accentuation.

The grammar is based on historical principles and is complete, but certain sections are distinguished by thicker types, and if taken by themselves constitute an elementary course. Graduated Readers, such as are now appearing in England, should be used in conjunction with the grammar.

### Spanish.

## PRACTICAL SPANISH

**A Grammar of the Spanish Language.** With Exercises, Vocabularies and Materials for Conversation. By **Don Fernando de Arteaga**, Taylorian Teacher of Spanish in the University of Oxford. **Part I**, *3s. 6d.*; **Part II**, *4s.*

*Notes and Queries.*—"A more serviceable and practical work, and a better guide to the treasures of Spanish literature and the idioms of Spanish speech, is not to be hoped."

*Pall Mall Gazette.*—"A book to be cordially commended, especially to young Englishmen of business desirous of gaining a practically useful knowledge of Spanish."

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.









